

Blue Coat® Systems SG™ Appliance

Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance

SGOS Version 5.2.2



Contact Information

Blue Coat Systems Inc.
420 North Mary Ave
Sunnyvale, CA 94085-4121

<http://www.bluecoat.com/support/contact.html>

bcs.info@bluecoat.com

<http://www.bluecoat.com>

For concerns or feedback about the documentation: documentation@bluecoat.com

Copyright© 1999-2007 Blue Coat Systems, Inc. All rights reserved worldwide. No part of this document may be reproduced by any means nor modified, decompiled, disassembled, published or distributed, in whole or in part, or translated to any electronic medium or other means without the written consent of Blue Coat Systems, Inc. All right, title and interest in and to the Software and documentation are and shall remain the exclusive property of Blue Coat Systems, Inc. and its licensors. ProxyAV™, CacheOS™, SGOS™, SG™, Spyware Interceptor™, Scope™, RA Connector™, RA Manager™, Remote Access™ and MACH5™ are trademarks of Blue Coat Systems, Inc. and CacheFlow®, Blue Coat®, Accelerating The Internet®, ProxySG®, WinProxy®, AccessNow®, Ositis®, Powering Internet Management®, The Ultimate Internet Sharing Solution®, Cerberian®, Permeo®, Permeo Technologies, Inc.®, and the Cerberian and Permeo logos are registered trademarks of Blue Coat Systems, Inc. All other trademarks contained in this document and in the Software are the property of their respective owners.

BLUE COAT SYSTEMS, INC. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, ON SOFTWARE AND DOCUMENTATION FURNISHED HEREUNDER INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THE WARRANTIES OF DESIGN, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL BLUE COAT SYSTEMS, INC., ITS SUPPLIERS OR ITS LICENSORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES, WHETHER ARISING IN TORT, CONTRACT OR ANY OTHER LEGAL THEORY EVEN IF BLUE COAT SYSTEMS, INC. HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Document Number: 231-02841

Document Revision: SGOS 5.2.2—09/2007

Contents

Contact Information

Chapter 1: About Security

| | |
|---|----|
| Controlling SG Appliance Access | 11 |
| Controlling User Access with Identity-based Access Controls | 11 |
| SSL Between the SG Appliance and the Authentication Server..... | 12 |
| About This Book | 12 |
| Document Conventions..... | 13 |

Chapter 2: Controlling Access to the SG Appliance

| | |
|--|----|
| Limiting Access to the SG Appliance | 15 |
| Requiring a PIN for the Front Panel..... | 15 |
| Limiting Workstation Access | 16 |
| Securing the Serial Port | 16 |
| About Password Security..... | 16 |
| Limiting User Access to the SG Appliance—Overview | 17 |
| Moderate Security: Restricting Management Console Access Through the Console Access Control List (ACL) | 19 |
| Maximum Security: Administrative Authentication and Authorization Policy..... | 20 |
| Defining Administrator Authentication and Authorization Policies..... | 20 |
| Defining Policies Using the Visual Policy Manager | 20 |
| Defining Policies Directly in Policy Files..... | 21 |
| Admin Transactions and <Admin> Layers..... | 21 |
| Example Policy Using CPL Syntax | 24 |

Chapter 3: Controlling Access to the Internet and Intranet

Section A: Managing Users

| | |
|----------------------------------|----|
| About User Login | 26 |
| Viewing Logged-In Users | 26 |
| Logging Out Users | 27 |
| Inactivity Timeout..... | 27 |
| Administrator Action | 28 |
| Policy..... | 28 |
| Refreshing User Data | 28 |
| Credential Refresh Time..... | 29 |
| Authorization Refresh Time | 29 |
| Surrogate Refresh Time..... | 30 |
| Policy..... | 30 |

| | |
|--|----|
| Related CLI Syntax to Manage Users..... | 30 |
| Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies | |
| Understanding Authentication Modes..... | 32 |
| Understanding Origin-Style Redirection | 34 |
| Selecting an Appropriate Surrogate Credential | 35 |
| Configuring Transparent Proxy Authentication..... | 35 |
| Permitting Users to Login with Authentication or Authorization Failures..... | 37 |
| Using Guest Authentication..... | 38 |
| Using Default Groups | 39 |
| Section C: Using SSL with Authentication and Authorization Services | |
| Using SSL Between the Client and the SG Appliance | 41 |
| Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations | |
| Using CPL | 42 |
| Chapter 4: Understanding and Managing X.509 Certificates | |
| Section A: Concepts | |
| Public Keys and Private Keys..... | 52 |
| Certificates..... | 52 |
| SSL Certificates..... | 52 |
| CA Certificates | 53 |
| External Certificates..... | 53 |
| Keyrings..... | 53 |
| Cipher Suites Supported by SGOS Software | 53 |
| Server-Gated Cryptography and International Step-Up..... | 54 |
| Section B: Using Keyrings and SSL Certificates | |
| Creating a Keyring | 56 |
| Deleting an Existing Keyring and Certificate | 58 |
| Section C: Managing Certificates | |
| Managing Certificate Signing Requests | 59 |
| Creating a CSR | 59 |
| Viewing a Certificate Signing Request | 60 |
| Managing SSL Certificates | 60 |
| Creating Self-Signed SSL Certificates | 61 |
| Importing a Server Certificate..... | 62 |
| Using Certificate Revocation Lists | 62 |
| Troubleshooting Certificate Problems | 64 |
| Section D: Using External Certificates | |
| Importing and Deleting External Certificates..... | 65 |
| Deleting an External Certificate..... | 65 |
| Digitally Signing Access Logs | 66 |

Section E: Advanced Configuration

| | |
|--|----|
| Importing an Existing Keypair and Certificate..... | 67 |
| About Certificate Chains..... | 69 |
| Importing a CA Certificate | 69 |
| Creating CA Certificate Lists..... | 70 |

Chapter 5: Certificate Realm Authentication

| | |
|---|----|
| How Certificate Realm Works | 73 |
| Creating a Certificate Realm..... | 74 |
| Defining a Certificate Realm | 74 |
| Defining Certificate Realm General Properties | 75 |
| Revoking User Certificates | 76 |
| Creating the Certificate Authorization Policy | 77 |
| Tips..... | 78 |

Chapter 6: Oracle COREid Authentication

| | |
|---|----|
| Understanding COREid Interaction with Blue Coat | 79 |
| Configuring the COREid Access System..... | 79 |
| Additional COREid Configuration Notes | 80 |
| Configuring the SG Realm..... | 80 |
| Participating in a Single Sign-On (SSO) Scheme | 81 |
| Avoiding SG Appliance Challenges..... | 81 |
| Creating a COREid Realm | 82 |
| Configuring Agents | 82 |
| Configuring the COREid Access Server | 83 |
| Configuring the General COREid Settings..... | 84 |
| Creating the CPL..... | 86 |

Chapter 7: Forms-Based Authentication

Section A: Understanding Authentication Forms

| | |
|--|----|
| User/Realm CPL Substitutions for Authentication Forms..... | 93 |
| Tip..... | 94 |

Section B: Creating and Editing a Form

Section C: Setting Storage Options

Section D: Using CPL with Forms-Based Authentication

| | |
|-----------|-----|
| Tips..... | 100 |
|-----------|-----|

Chapter 8: IWA Realm Authentication and Authorization

| | |
|---|-----|
| How Blue Coat Works with IWA | 101 |
| Creating an IWA Realm | 101 |
| IWA Servers..... | 102 |
| Defining IWA Realm General Properties | 103 |
| Creating the CPL..... | 107 |
| Notes | 107 |

Chapter 9: LDAP Realm Authentication and Authorization

| | |
|--|-----|
| Overview | 109 |
| Creating an LDAP Realm | 110 |
| LDAP Servers | 111 |
| Defining LDAP Base Distinguished Names | 112 |
| LDAP Search & Groups Tab (Authorization and Group Information) | 114 |
| Customizing LDAP Objectclass Attribute Values..... | 116 |
| Defining LDAP General Realm Properties..... | 117 |
| Creating the CPL..... | 119 |
| Notes | 120 |

Chapter 10: Local Realm Authentication and Authorization

| | |
|---|-----|
| Creating a Local Realm | 121 |
| Changing Local Realm Properties | 121 |
| Notes | 123 |
| Defining the Local User List | 123 |
| Creating a Local User List..... | 123 |
| Populating a List using the .htpasswd File | 125 |
| Uploading the .htpasswd File | 125 |
| Populating a Local User List through the SG Appliance | 126 |
| Enhancing Security Settings for the Local User List..... | 128 |
| Creating the CPL..... | 129 |

Chapter 11: Policy Substitution Realm

| | |
|---|-----|
| How Policy Substitution Realms Work | 131 |
| Creating a Policy Substitution Realm | 134 |
| Configuring User Information | 134 |
| Creating a List of Users to Ignore | 136 |
| Configuring Authorization..... | 137 |
| Defining Policy Substitution Realm General Properties | 138 |
| Notes | 139 |
| Creating the Policy Substitution Policy | 140 |
| Using Single Sign-On Realms and Proxy Chains..... | 141 |

Chapter 12: CA eTrust SiteMinder Authentication

| | |
|---|-----|
| Understanding SiteMinder Interaction with Blue Coat | 143 |
| Configuring the SiteMinder Policy Server | 143 |
| Additional SiteMinder Configuration Notes | 144 |
| Configuring the SG Realm..... | 145 |
| Participating in a Single Sign-On (SSO) Scheme | 145 |
| Avoiding SG Appliance Challenges..... | 146 |
| Creating a SiteMinder Realm | 146 |
| Configuring Agents | 146 |
| Configuring SiteMinder Servers | 147 |
| Defining SiteMinder Server General Properties..... | 148 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Configuring General Settings for SiteMinder..... | 150 |
| Creating the CPL..... | 153 |
| Chapter 13: RADIUS Realm Authentication and Authorization | |
| Creating a RADIUS Realm..... | 156 |
| Defining RADIUS Realm Properties | 156 |
| Defining RADIUS Realm General Properties | 158 |
| Creating the Policy | 160 |
| Fine-Tuning RADIUS Realms..... | 160 |
| Creating RADIUS Groups | 161 |
| CPL Example | 162 |
| Troubleshooting | 162 |
| Notes | 162 |
| Chapter 14: Novell Single Sign-on Authentication and Authorization | |
| How Novell SSO Realms Work | 164 |
| How Novell SSO Authorization Works | 164 |
| Creating a Novell SSO Realm | 165 |
| Novell SSO Agents..... | 165 |
| Adding LDAP Servers to Search and Monitor | 167 |
| Querying the LDAP Search Realm | 168 |
| Configuring Authorization..... | 169 |
| Defining Novell SSO Realm General Properties | 169 |
| Modifying the sso.ini File for Novell SSO Realms | 171 |
| Creating the CPL | 172 |
| Using Single Sign-On Realms and Proxy Chains..... | 172 |
| Notes | 173 |
| Chapter 15: Sequence Realm Authentication | |
| Adding Realms to a Sequence Realm..... | 175 |
| Creating a Sequence Realm | 176 |
| Adding Realms to a Sequence Realm..... | 176 |
| Defining Sequence Realm General Properties | 178 |
| Tips..... | 179 |
| Chapter 16: Windows Single Sign-on Authentication | |
| How Windows SSO Realms Work | 181 |
| How Windows SSO Works with BCAAA..... | 182 |
| BCAAA Synchronization..... | 182 |
| How Windows SSO Authorization Works | 183 |
| Creating a Windows SSO Realm | 183 |
| Windows SSO Agents..... | 184 |
| Configuring Authorization..... | 185 |
| Defining Windows SSO Realm General Properties | 186 |
| Modifying the sso.ini File for Windows SSO Realms | 188 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Using Single Sign-On Realms and Proxy Chains..... | 190 |
| Notes..... | 191 |
| Chapter 17: Using XML Realms | |
| About XML Realms | 193 |
| Before Creating an XML Realm | 194 |
| Creating an XML Realm..... | 194 |
| Configuring XML Servers..... | 195 |
| Configuring XML Options..... | 196 |
| Configuring XML Realm Authorization..... | 196 |
| Configuring XML General Realm Properties..... | 198 |
| Creating the CPL..... | 200 |
| Viewing Statistics | 200 |
| Appendix A: Glossary | |
| Appendix B: Using the Authentication/Authorization Agent | |
| Using the BCAA Service | 215 |
| Performance Notes | 216 |
| Installing the BCAA Service on a Windows System..... | 217 |
| Notes on SSL and Systems Running pre-Windows 2003..... | 222 |
| Notes on SSL and Systems Running Windows 2003 and Later | 222 |
| Installing the BCAA Service on a Solaris System..... | 222 |
| Creating Service Principal Names for IWA Realms..... | 223 |
| Troubleshooting Authentication Agent Problems | 225 |
| Common BCAA Event Messages | 225 |
| Appendix C: Managing the SSL Client | |
| Understanding the SSL Client..... | 233 |
| Creating an SSL Client..... | 233 |
| Associating a Keyring and Protocol with the SSL Client..... | 233 |
| Changing the Cipher Suites of the SSL Client | 234 |
| Troubleshooting Server Certificate Verification..... | 237 |
| Setting the SSL Negotiation Timeout | 237 |
| Appendix D: XML Protocol | |
| Section A: Authenticate Request | |
| GET Method (User Credentials in Request)..... | 240 |
| GET Method (User Credentials in Headers)..... | 240 |
| POST Method (User Credentials in Request)..... | 240 |
| POST Method (User Credentials in Headers)..... | 240 |
| Section B: Authenticate Response | |
| Success | 242 |
| Failed/Denied | 242 |

Contents

Section C: Authorize Request

| | |
|------------------|-----|
| GET Method..... | 244 |
| POST Method..... | 244 |

Section D: Authorize Response

| | |
|---------------|-----|
| Success | 245 |
| Failed..... | 245 |

Appendix E: Authentication and Authorization Errors

Index

Chapter 1: About Security

Enterprise-wide security begins with security on the SG appliance, and continues with controlling user access to the Intranet and Internet.

SSH and HTTPS are the recommended (and default) methods for managing access to the SG appliance. SSL is the recommended protocol for communication between the appliance and a realm's off-box authentication server.

Controlling SG Appliance Access

You can control access to the SG appliance several ways: by limiting physical access to the system, by using passwords, restricting the use of console account, through per-user RSA public key authentication, and through Blue Coat Content Policy Language (CPL). How secure the system needs to be depends upon the environment.

You can limit access to the SG appliance by:

- Restricting physical access to the system and by requiring a PIN to access the front panel.
- Restricting the IP addresses that are permitted to connect to the SG appliance CLI.
- Requiring a password to secure the Setup Console.

These methods are in addition to the restrictions placed on the console account (a console account user password) and the Enable password. For information on using the console account, refer to *Volume 1: Getting Started*.

By using every possible method (physically limiting access, limiting workstation IP addresses, and using passwords), the SG appliance is very secure.

Once the SG appliance is secure, you can limit access to the Internet and intranet. It is possible to control access to the network without using authentication. You only need to use authentication if you want to use identity-based access controls.

Controlling User Access with Identity-based Access Controls

The SG appliance provides a flexible authentication architecture that supports multiple services with multiple backend servers (for example, LDAP directory servers together with NT domains with no trust relationship) within each authentication scheme with the introduction of the *realm*.

A *realm* authenticates and authorizes users for access to SG services using either explicit proxy or transparent proxy mode, discussed in *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*.

Multiple authentication realms can be used on a single SG appliance. Multiple realms are essential if the enterprise is a managed provider or the company has merged with or acquired another company. Even for companies using only one protocol, multiple realms might be necessary, such as the case of a company using an LDAP server with multiple authentication boundaries. You can use realm sequencing to search the multiple realms all at once.

A realm configuration includes:

- Realm name.
- Authentication service—(IWA, LDAP, RADIUS, Local, Certificate, Sequences, CA eTrust SiteMinder®, Oracle COREid™, Policy Substitution, Windows SSO, Novell SSO).
- External server configuration—Backend server configuration information, such as host, port, and other relevant information based on the selected service.
- Authentication schema—The definition used to authenticate users.
- Authorization schema—The definition used to authorize users for membership in defined groups and check for attributes that trigger evaluation against any defined policy rules.
- One-time passwords are supported for RADIUS realms only.

You can view the list of realms already created by clicking **Configuration > Authentication > Realms**. Realms are created on the home page for each realm.

SSL Between the SG Appliance and the Authentication Server

SSL communication between the SG appliance and LDAP and IWA authentication servers is supported. In addition, you can also use SSL between the client and the SG appliance. For more information on using SSL between the client and the appliance, see “[Using SSL with Authentication and Authorization Services](#)” on page 41.

Configuring a realm to use SSL between the SG appliance and the authentication server is performed on a per-realm basis. Part of the SSL configuration is specifying whether to verify the server's certificate. If the server certificate is to be verified, then the server's certificate must be signed by a Certificate Authority that the SG appliance trusts, and the common name in the server certificate must match the server host as specified in the realm configuration.

The realms use the default SSL client defined on the SG appliance for SSL communications to the authentication servers.

Note: If the browser is configured for on-line checking of certificate revocation, the status check must be configured to bypass authentication.

About This Book

The first few chapters of *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance* deal with limiting access to the SG appliance . The remainder of the book discusses the various realms:

- [□ Chapter 2: "Controlling Access to the SG Appliance"](#)
- [□ Chapter 3: "Controlling Access to the Internet and Intranet"](#)
- [□ Chapter 4: "Understanding and Managing X.509 Certificates"](#)
- [□ Chapter 5: "Certificate Realm Authentication"](#)
- [□ Chapter 6: "Oracle COREid Authentication"](#)
- [□ Chapter 7: "Forms-Based Authentication"](#)
- [□ Chapter 8: "IWA Realm Authentication and Authorization"](#)
- [□ Chapter 9: "LDAP Realm Authentication and Authorization"](#)

- Chapter 10: "Local Realm Authentication and Authorization"
- Chapter 11: "Policy Substitution Realm"
- Chapter 12: "CA eTrust SiteMinder Authentication"
- Chapter 13: "RADIUS Realm Authentication and Authorization"
- Chapter 14: "Novell Single Sign-on Authentication and Authorization"
- Chapter 15: "Sequence Realm Authentication"
- Chapter 16: "Windows Single Sign-on Authentication"
- Chapter 17: "Using XML Realms"
- Appendix A: "Glossary"
- Appendix D: "XML Protocol"
- Appendix C: "Managing the SSL Client"
- Appendix B: "Using the Authentication/Authorization Agent"

Document Conventions

The following section lists the typographical and Command Line Interface (CLI) syntax conventions used in this manual.

Table 1-1. Document Conventions

| Conventions | Definition |
|-------------------------|--|
| <i>Italics</i> | The first use of a new or Blue Coat-proprietary term. |
| Courier font | Command line text that appears on your administrator workstation. |
| <i>Courier Italics</i> | A command line variable that is to be substituted with a literal name or value pertaining to the appropriate facet of your network system. |
| Courier Boldface | A Blue Coat literal to be entered as shown. |
| { } | One of the parameters enclosed within the braces must be supplied |
| [] | An optional parameter or parameters. |
| | Either the parameter before or after the pipe character can or must be selected, but not both. |

Chapter 2: Controlling Access to the SG Appliance

You can control access to the SG appliance several ways: by limiting physical access to the system, by using passwords, restricting the use of console account, through per-user RSA public key authentication, and through Blue Coat Content Policy Language (CPL). How secure the system needs to be depends upon the environment.

This section contains:

- “[Limiting Access to the SG Appliance](#)”
- “[About Password Security](#)” on page 16
- “[Limiting User Access to the SG Appliance—Overview](#)” on page 17
- “[Moderate Security: Restricting Management Console Access Through the Console Access Control List \(ACL\)](#)” on page 19
- “[Maximum Security: Administrative Authentication and Authorization Policy](#)” on page 20

Limits Access to the SG Appliance

You can limit access to the SG appliance by:

- Restricting physical access to the system and by requiring a PIN to access the front panel.
- Restricting the IP addresses that are permitted to connect to the SG appliance CLI.
- Requiring a password to secure the Setup Console.

These methods are in addition to the restrictions placed on the console account (a console account user password) and the Enable password. For information on using the console account, refer to *Volume 1: Getting Started*.

By using every possible method (physically limiting access, limiting workstation IP addresses, and using passwords), the SG appliance is very secure.

This section discusses:

- “[Requiring a PIN for the Front Panel](#)”
- “[Limiting Workstation Access](#)” on page 16
- “[Securing the Serial Port](#)” on page 16

Requiring a PIN for the Front Panel

On systems that have a front panel display, you can create a four-digit PIN to protect the system from unauthorized use. The PIN is hashed and stored. You can only create a PIN from the command line.

To create a front panel PIN, after initial configuration is complete:

From the (config) prompt:

```
SGOS#(config) security front-panel-pin PIN
```

where *PIN* is a four-digit number.

To clear the front-panel PIN, enter:

```
SGOS#(config) security front-panel-pin 0000
```

Limiting Workstation Access

During initial configuration, you have the option of preventing workstations with unauthorized IP addresses from accessing the CLI. If this option is not enabled, all workstations are allowed to access the CLI. You can also add allowed workstations later to the access control list (ACL). (For more information on limiting workstation access, see “[Moderate Security: Restricting Management Console Access Through the Console Access Control List \(ACL\)](#)” on page 19.)

Securing the Serial Port

If you choose to secure the serial port, you must provide a Setup Console password that is required to access the Setup Console in the future.

Once the secure serial port is enabled:

- The Setup Console password is required to access the Setup Console.
- An authentication challenge (username and password) is issued to access the CLI through the serial port.

To recover from a lost Setup Console password, you can:

- Use the Front Panel display to either disable the secure serial port or enter a new Setup Console password.
- Use the CLI `restore-defaults factory-defaults` command to delete all system settings. For information on using the `restore-defaults factory-defaults` command, refer to *Volume 9: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*.
- Use the reset button (if the appliance has a reset button) to delete all system settings.

To enable the secure serial port, refer to the *Installation Guide* for your platform.

About Password Security

In the SG appliance, the console administrator password, the Setup Console password, and Enable (privileged-mode) password are hashed and stored. It is not possible to reverse the hash to recover the plaintext passwords.

In addition, the `show config` and `show security` CLI commands display these passwords in their hashed form. The length of the hashed password depends on the hash algorithm used so it is not a fixed length across the board.

Passwords that the SG appliance uses to authenticate itself to outside services are encrypted using triple-DES on the appliance, and using RSA public key encryption for output with the `show config` CLI command. You can use a third-party encryption application to create encrypted passwords and copy them into the SG appliance using an encrypted-password command (which is available in several modes and described in those modes). If you use a third-party encryption application, verify it supports RSA encryption, OAEP padding, and Base64 encoded with no new lines.

These passwords, set up during configuration of the external service, include:

- Access log FTP client passwords (primary, alternate)—For configuration information, refer to *Volume 8: Access Logging*.

- Archive configuration FTP password—For configuration information, refer to the archive configuration information in *Volume 1: Getting Started*.
- RADIUS primary and alternate secret—For configuration information, see [Chapter 13: "RADIUS Realm Authentication and Authorization"](#).
- LDAP search password—For configuration information, see ["LDAP Search & Groups Tab \(Authorization and Group Information\)"](#) on page 114.
- Content filter download passwords—For configuration information, refer to the content filtering information in *Volume 7: Managing Content*.

Limiting User Access to the SG Appliance—Overview

When deciding how to give other users read-only or read-write access to the SG appliance, sharing the basic console account settings is only one option. The following summarizes all available options:

Note: If Telnet Console access is configured, Telnet can be used to manage the SG appliance with behavior similar to SSH with password authentication.

SSL configuration is not allowed through Telnet, but is permissible through SSH.

Behavior in the following sections that applies to SSH with password authentication also applies to Telnet. Use of Telnet is not recommended because it is not a secure protocol.

- Console account—minimum security

The console account username and password are evaluated when the SG appliance is accessed from the Management Console through a browser and from the CLI through SSH with password authentication. The Enable (privileged-mode) password is evaluated when the console account is used through SSH with password authentication and when the CLI is accessed through the serial console and through SSH with RSA authentication. The simplest way to give access to others is sharing this basic console account information, but it is the least secure and is not recommended.

To give read-only access to the CLI, do not give out the Enable (privileged-mode) password.

- Console access control list—moderate security

Using the access control list (ACL) allows you to further restrict use of the console account and SSH with RSA authentication to workstations identified by their IP address and subnet mask. When the ACL is enforced, the console account can only be used by workstations defined in the console ACL. Also, SSH with RSA authentication connections are only valid from workstations specified in the console ACL (provided it is enabled).

After setting the console account username, password, and Enable (privileged-mode) password, use the CLI or the Management Console to create a console ACL. See ["Moderate Security: Restricting Management Console Access Through the Console Access Control List \(ACL\)"](#) on page 19.

- Per-user RSA public key authentication—moderate security

Each administrator's public keys are stored on the appliance. When connecting through SSH, the administrator logs in with no password exchange. Authentication occurs by verifying knowledge of the corresponding private key. This is secure because the passwords never go over the network.

This is a less flexible option than CPL because you cannot control level of access with policy, but it is a better choice than sharing the console credentials.

Blue Coat Content Policy Language (CPL)—maximum security

CPL allows you to control administrative access to the SG appliance through policy. If the credentials supplied are not the console account username and password, policy is evaluated when the SG appliance is accessed through SSH with password authentication or the Management Console. Policy is never evaluated on direct serial console connections or SSH connections using RSA authentication.

- Using the CLI or the Management Console GUI, create an authentication realm to be used for authorizing administrative access. For administrative access, the realm must support BASIC credentials—for example, LDAP, RADIUS, Local, or IWA with BASIC credentials enabled.
- Using the Visual Policy Manager, or by adding CPL rules to the Local or Central policy file, specify policy rules that: (1) require administrators to log in using credentials from the previously-created administrative realm, and (2) specify the conditions under which administrators are either denied all access, given read-only access, or given read-write access. Authorization can be based on IP address, group membership, time of day, and many other conditions. For more information, refer to *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy*.
- To prevent anyone from using the console credentials to manage the SG appliance, set the console ACL to deny all access (unless you plan to use SSH with RSA authentication). For more information, see “[Moderate Security: Restricting Management Console Access Through the Console Access Control List \(ACL\)](#)” on page 19. You can also restrict access to a single IP address that can be used as the emergency recovery workstation.

The following chart details the various ways administrators can access the SG console and the authentication and authorization methods that apply to each.

Table 2-1. SG Console Access Methods/Available Security Measures

| Security Measures Available | Serial Console | SSH with Password Authentication | SSH with RSA Authentication | Management Console |
|--|----------------|---|-----------------------------|--|
| Username and password evaluated (console-level credentials) | | ✓ | | ✓ |
| Console Access List evaluated | | ✓ (if console credentials are offered) | ✓ | ✓ (if console credentials are offered) |
| CPL <Admin> Layer evaluated | | ✓ (see Note 1 below) | | ✓ (see Note 2 below) |
| Enable password required to enter privileged mode (see Note 2 below) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| CLI line-vty timeout command applies. | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Management Console Login/Logout | | | | ✓ |

Note 1: When using SSH (with a password) and credentials other than the console account, the enable password is actually the same as the login password. The privileged mode password set during configuration is used only in the serial console, SSH with RSA authentication, or when logging in with the console account.

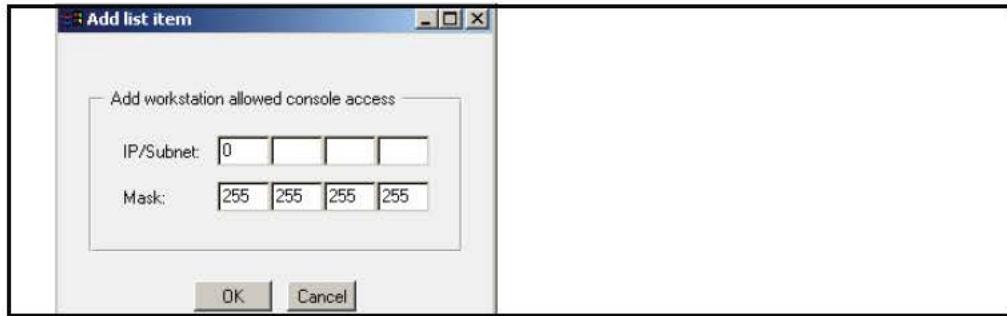
Note 2: In this case, user credentials are evaluated against the policy before executing each CLI command. If you log in using the console account, user credentials are not evaluated against the policy.

Moderate Security: Restricting Management Console Access Through the Console Access Control List (ACL)

The SG appliance allows you to limit access to the Management Console and CLI through the console ACL. An ACL, once set up, is enforced only when console credentials are used to access either the CLI or the Management Console, or when an SSH with RSA authentication connection is attempted. The following procedure specifies an ACL that lists the IP addresses permitted access.

To create an ACL:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Console Access > Console Access**.
2. (Optional) To add a new address to the ACL, click **New**.


 - a. In the IP/Subnet fields, enter a static IP address.
 - b. In the Mask fields, enter the subnet mask. To restrict access to an individual workstation, enter 255.255.255.255.
 - c. Click **OK** to add the workstation to the ACL and return to the Console Access page.
 - d. Repeat 2 to add other IP addresses.
3. (Optional) To remove a source address from the ACL, select the address to remove from the Console Access page and click **Delete**. See 2, above, for details.
4. (Optional) To change a source IP address, select the IP address to revise and click **Edit**. See 2, above, for details.
5. To impose the ACL defined in the list box, select **Enforce ACL for built-in administration**. To allow access to the CLI or Management Console using console account credentials from any workstation, deselect the checkbox. The ACL is ignored.

Important: Before you enforce the ACL, verify the IP address for the workstation you are using is included in the list. If you forget, or you find that you mistyped the IP address, you must correct the problem using the serial console.

6. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Related CLI Syntax to Create an ACL

```
SGOS#(config) security allowed-access add ip_address [subnet_mask]
SGOS#(config) security enforce-acl enable | disable
SGOS#(config) security allowed-access remove ip_address [subnet_mask]
```

Maximum Security: Administrative Authentication and Authorization Policy

The SG appliance permits you to define a rule-based administrative access policy. This policy is enforced when accessing:

- the Management Console through http or https
- the CLI through SSH when using password authentication
- the CLI through telnet
- the CLI through the serial port if the secure serial port is enabled

These policy rules can be specified either by using the VPM or by editing the Local policy file. Using policy rules, you can deny access, allow access without providing credentials, or require administrators to identify themselves by entering a username and password. If access is allowed, you can specify whether read-only or read-write access is given. You can make this policy contingent on IP address, time of day, group membership (if credentials were required), and many other conditions.

Serial-console access is not controlled by policy rules. For maximum security to the serial console, physical access must be limited.

SSH with RSA authentication also is not controlled by policy rules. You can configure several settings that control access: the enable password, the console ACL, and per-user keys configured through the **Configuration > Services > SSH > SSH Client** page. (If you use the CLI, SSH commands are under config > services > ssh-console.)

Defining Administrator Authentication and Authorization Policies

The SG appliance uses CPL to define policies, including administrator, authentication, and authorization policies. CPL also allows you to give administrator privileges to users in any external authentication service.

The following summarizes the steps required to define Administrator Authentication and Authorization policies on the SG appliance:

- (Optional) If you need to give administrative access to existing users or groups, create and configure the authentication realm.
- Define the policies in the appropriate policy file where you keep the <Admin> Layer layers and rules.
- Load the policy file on the SG appliance.

When you define such policies, make sure you define them in the appropriate policy file(s). For more information on policy files and how they are used, refer to *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy*.

Defining Policies Using the Visual Policy Manager

To define policies through the Management Console, use the Visual Policy Manager. When you use the VPM, policies are configured in CPL and saved in the VPM policy file. For examples of Administrator authentication or authorization policy CPL, continue with the next section. The VPM is described in detail in *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy*.

Defining Policies Directly in Policy Files

To define policies manually, type CPL *rules* directly in one of the two policy files, Central or Local.

Important: For specific information on creating policies within the policy files, refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

Following are the CPL elements that can be used to define administrator policies for the SG appliance.

To define administrator policies by editing a policy file:

1. Open the policy file in a text editor.
2. Define the policies, using the correct CPL syntax.
3. Save the file.
4. Load the policy file (refer to *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy*).

Admin Transactions and <Admin> Layers

Admin transactions execute <Admin> layers. Only a restricted set of conditions, properties, and actions are permitted in <Admin> layers. The table below lists the conditions permitted in the <Admin> layer.

Table 2-2. Network Connection Conditions

| <Admin> Network Connection Conditions | |
|---|--|
| client_address= <i>ip_address</i> [.subnetmask] | Tests for a match between <i>ip_address</i> and the IP address of the client transaction source. |
| proxy.port= <i>number</i> | Tests for a match between <i>number</i> and the port number for which the request is destined. |
| proxy.address= <i>ip_address</i> | Tests for a match between <i>ip_address</i> and the IP address of the network interface card for which the request is destined. |
| proxy.card= <i>number</i> | Tests for a match between <i>number</i> and the ordinal number associated with the network interface card for which the request is destined. |
| <Admin> General Conditions | |
| condition=condition.label | Tests if the specified defined condition is true. |
| release.id= | Tests the SG release id. |
| <Admin> Date/Time Conditions | |
| date[.utc]=[<i>date</i> <i>date...date</i>] | Tests for a match between <i>date</i> and the date timestamp associated with the source of the transaction. <i>date</i> specifies a single date of the form YYYY-MM-DD or an inclusive range, as in YYYY-MM-DD...YYYY-MM-DD. By default, date is calculated based on local time. To calculate year based on the Coordinated Universal Time, include the .utc qualifier |

Table 2-2. Network Connection Conditions (Continued)

| | |
|---|---|
| <code>year[.utc]=[year year...year]</code> | Tests for a match between <code>year</code> and the year timestamp associated with the source of the transaction. <code>year</code> specifies a single Gregorian calendar year of the form YYYY or an inclusive range of years, as in YYYY...YYYY. By default, year is calculated based on local time. To calculate year based on the Coordinated Universal Time, include the <code>.utc</code> qualifier. |
| <code>month[.utc]=[month month...month]</code> | Tests for a match between <code>month</code> and the month timestamp associated with the source of the transaction. <code>month</code> specifies a single Gregorian calendar month of the form MM or an inclusive range of months, as in MM...MM. By default, month is calculated based on local time. To calculate month based on the Coordinated Universal Time, include the <code>.utc</code> qualifier. |
| <code>weekday[.utc]=[number number...number]</code> | Tests for a match between <code>weekday</code> and the weekday timestamp associated with the source of the transaction. <code>weekday</code> specifies a single day of the week (where Monday=1, Tuesday=2, and Sunday=7) or an inclusive range of weekdays, as in <code>number...number</code> . By default, weekday is calculated based on local time. To calculate weekday based on the Coordinated Universal Time, include the <code>.utc</code> qualifier. |
| <code>day[.utc]=[day day...day]</code> | Tests for a match between <code>day</code> and the day timestamp associated with the source of the transaction. <code>day</code> specifies a single Gregorian calendar day of the month of the form DD or an inclusive range of days, as in DD...DD. By default, day is calculated based on local time. To calculate day based on the Coordinated Universal Time, include the <code>.utc</code> qualifier. |
| <code>hour[.utc]=[hour hour...hour]</code> | Tests for a match between <code>hour</code> and the hour timestamp associated with the source of the transaction. <code>hour</code> specifies a single Gregorian hour of the form HH (00, 01, and so forth, through 23) or an inclusive range of hours, as in HH...HH. By default, hour is calculated based on local time. To calculate hour based on the Coordinated Universal Time, include the <code>.utc</code> qualifier. |
| <code>minute[.utc]=[minute minute...minute]</code> | Tests for a match between <code>minute</code> and the minute timestamp associated with the source of the transaction. <code>minute</code> specifies a single Gregorian minute of the form MM (00, 01, and so forth, through 59) or an inclusive range of minutes, as in MM...MM. By default, minute is calculated based on local time. To calculate minute based on the Coordinated Universal Time, include the <code>.utc</code> qualifier. |
| <code>time[.utc]=[time time...time]</code> | Tests for a match between <code>time</code> and the time timestamp associated with the source of the transaction. <code>time</code> specifies military time of the form TTTT (0000 through 2359) or an inclusive range of times, as in TTTT...TTTT. By default, time is calculated based on local time. To calculate time based on the Coordinated Universal Time, include the <code>.utc</code> qualifier. |
| <Admin> Authorization Conditions | |
| <code>attribute.name =value</code> | Tests if the current transaction is authorized in a RADIUS or LDAP realm, and if the authenticated user has the specified attribute with the specified value. This trigger is unavailable if the current transaction is not authenticated |

Table 2-2. Network Connection Conditions (Continued)

| | |
|---|--|
| <code>authenticated={yes no}</code> | Tests if authentication was requested and the credentials could be verified. |
| <code>group=group_name</code> | If <code>authenticate=yes</code> , the group condition tests the source of the transaction for membership in the specified groupname. |
| <code>has_attribute.name=boolean</code> | Tests if the current transaction is authorized in an LDAP realm and if the authenticated user has the specified LDAP attribute. |
| <code>realm=realm_name</code> | If <code>authenticate=yes</code> , the realm condition tests the source of the transaction for membership in the specified realm name. |
| <code>user=username</code> | If <code>authenticate=yes</code> , the user condition tests the source of the transaction for the expected username. |
| <code>user.domain=windows_domain_name</code> | (This condition is IWA-realm specific.) If <code>authenticate=yes</code> , the user_domain condition tests whether the realm type is IWA and whether the domain component of the username is the expected domain name. |
| <Admin> Read-only or Read-write Conditions | |
| <code>admin_access=read write</code> | <p><code>read</code> tests whether the source of the transaction has read-only permission for the SG console. <code>write</code> tests whether the source has read-write permission.</p> <p>When an Administrator logs into the CLI, the SG appliance executes an <code><Admin></code> transaction that includes the condition <code>admin_access=read</code>. If the transaction is ultimately allowed (all conditions have been met), the user will have read-only access to configuration information through the CLI. Further, when that user executes the CLI <code>enable</code> command, or logs into the Management Console, the SG appliance executes an <code><Admin></code> transaction with <code>admin_access=write</code>. If the transaction is allowed, the user will have read-write access within the CLI or the Management Console.</p> |

The table below lists the properties permitted in the `<Admin>` layer:

Table 2-3. Properties in the `<Admin>` Layer

| <Admin> Properties | |
|---|---|
| <code>deny</code> | Refuse service to the source of the transaction. |
| <code>authenticate(realm_name)</code> | Requests authentication of the transaction source for the specified realm. |
| <code>authenticate.force()</code> | If <code>yes</code> is specified then forces authentication even if the transaction is denied. This results in the user information being available for logging. If <code>no</code> , then early denial without authentication is possible. |
| <code>allow</code> | Permit further service to the source of the transaction. |
| <code>log.suppress.field-id()</code> | Controls suppression of the specified <code>field-id</code> in all facilities |
| <code>log.suppress.field-id[log_list]()</code> | Controls suppression of the specified <code>field-id</code> in the specified facilities. |

Table 2-3. Properties in the <Admin> Layer (Continued)

| | |
|--|--|
| <code>log.rewrite.field-id()</code> | Controls rewrites of a specific log field in all facilities. |
| <code>log.rewrite.field-id[log_list]()</code> | Controls rewrites of a specific log field in a specified list of log facilities. |

The table below lists the actions permitted in the <Admin> layer:

Table 2-4. Actions permitted in the <Admin> Layer

| <Admin> Actions | |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>notify_email()</code> | Sends an e-mail notification to the list of recipients specified in the Event Log mail configuration when the transaction terminates. |
| <code>notify_snmp()</code> | The SNMP trap is sent when the transaction terminates. |

Example Policy Using CPL Syntax

To authenticate users against an LDAP realm, use the following syntax in the Local Policy file:

```
<admin>
    authenticate(LDAP_Realm)

<admin>
    group="cn=Administrators,cn=Groups,dc=bluecoat,dc=com" allow
```

This authenticates users against the specified LDAP realm. If the users are successfully authenticated and belong to group Administrators, they are allowed to administer the SG appliance.

Chapter 3: Controlling Access to the Internet and Intranet

After you have physically secured the SG appliance and limited access to it through passwords, you can limit users' access to the Internet and intranet.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Section A: "Managing Users" on page 26](#)
- [Section B: "Using Authentication and Proxies" on page 32](#)
- [Section C: "Using SSL with Authentication and Authorization Services" on page 41](#)
- [Section D: "Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations" on page 42](#)

Section A: Managing Users

Section A: Managing Users

When a user is first authenticated to an SG appliance, a user login is created. You can view users who are logged in and configure the SG appliance to log them out and refresh their data.

This section includes the following topics:

- “About User Login” on page 26
- “Viewing Logged-In Users” on page 26
- “Logging Out Users” on page 27
- “Refreshing User Data” on page 28
- “Related CLI Syntax to Manage Users” on page 30

About User Login

A user login is the combination of:

- An IP address
- A username
- A realm

For a specific realm, a user is only considered to be logged in once from a given workstation, even if using multiple user agents. However:

- If policy authenticates the user against multiple realms, the user is logged in once for each realm.
- If a user logs in from multiple workstations, the user is logged in once per workstation.
- If multiple users share an IP address (same server, terminal services, or are behind a NAT, which allows a local-area network to use one set of IP addresses), each user is logged in once.
- If a user logs in from multiple workstations behind a NAT, the user is logged in once.

Viewing Logged-In Users

You can browse all users logged into the SG appliance. You can also filter the displayed users by Glob-username pattern, by IP address subnet, and by realm.

The glob-based username pattern supports three operators:

- '*' : match zero or more characters
- '?' : match exactly one character
- '[x-y]': match any character in the character range from 'x' to 'y'

The IP address subnet notation is based on Classless Inter-Domain_Routing (CIDR), a way of interpreting IP addresses, as follows:

- 1.2.3.4 : the IP address 1.2.3.4
- 1.2.3.0/24: the subnet 1.2.3.0 with netmask 255.255.255.0

The realm selection allows an exact realm name or **All realms** to be selected.

Section A: Managing Users

You can use a combination of these filters to display only the users you are interested in.

To browse users:

1. Click **Statistics > Authentication**.



2. Select a single realm or **All realms** from the **Realm** drop-down list.
3. (Optional) Enter a regular expression in the **User pattern** field to display the usernames that match the pattern.
4. (Optional) Enter an IP address or subnet in the **IP prefix** field to display the IP addresses that match the prefix.
5. Click **Display by user** to display the statistic results by user, or **Display by IP** to display the results by IP address.

Logging Out Users

A logged-in user can be logged out with one of three mechanisms:

- Inactivity timeout (see “[Inactivity Timeout](#)” on page 27)
- Explicit logout by the administrator (see “[Administrator Action](#)” on page 28)
- Policy (see “[Policy](#)” on page 28)

A logged-out user must re-authenticate with the proxy before logging back in.

- For single sign-on (SSO) realms (Windows SSO, Novell SSO, and IWA configured for SSO), reauthentication is transparent to the user.
- For non-SSO realms, the user is explicitly challenged for credentials after logout, depending on the **Challenge user after logout** setting in the SG’s realm.

Note: The **Challenge user after logout** option only works when cookie-surrogates are used. If this setting is enabled, the user is explicitly challenged for credentials after logging out.

Inactivity Timeout

Each realm has a new inactivity-timeout setting, used in conjunction with the last activity-time value for a particular login. Each time that a login is completed, this activity time is updated. If the time since the last activity time for a specific login exceeds the inactivity-timeout value, the user is logged out.

Section A: Managing Users

Administrator Action

The administrator can explicitly log out a set of users using the **Logout** link at the bottom of the user login information pages. See “[Viewing Logged-In Users](#)” on page 26 for information about displaying user login information. For information about using the CLI to logout users, see “[Related CLI Syntax to Manage Users](#)” on page 30.

Policy

Policy has three properties and three conditions to manage user logouts. These properties and conditions can be used to dynamically log out users. For example, you can create a logout link for users.

For information about using policy, refer to *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy* and *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

New Properties

Policy has three properties for logging out users.

- `user.login.log_out(yes)`

This property logs out the user referenced by the current transaction.

- `user.login.log_out_other(yes)`

If a user is logged in at more than one IP address, this property logs the user out from all IP addresses except the current IP address.

- `client.address.login.log_out_other(yes)`

If more than one user is logged in at the IP address of the current transaction, this property logs out all users from the current IP address except the current user.

New Conditions

Several conditions support different logout policies.

- `user.login.count`

This condition matches the number of times that a specific user is logged in with the current realm. You can use this condition to ensure that a user can be logged in only at one workstation. If the condition is combined with the `user.login.log_out_other` property, old login sessions on other workstations are automatically logged out.

- `client.address.login.count`

This condition matches the number of different users who are logged into the current IP address, and you can use it to limit the user number.

- `user.login.time`

This condition matches the number of seconds since the current login started, and you can use it to limit the length of a login session.

Refreshing User Data

You can refresh user data with the following refresh-time options on the SG appliance:

- Credential refresh time: This option specifies how long a cached username and password is *trusted* (do not require revalidation).

Section A: Managing Users

- Surrogate refresh time: This option specifies how long surrogate credentials are trusted in a particular realm.
- Authorization refresh time: This option specifies how long authorization data, such as groups and attributes, are trusted.

While the realms have the baseline settings for the different refresh times, policy and administrator actions can override the realm settings. Using the same interface and filters as used for viewing logins, the administrator can select logins and refresh the authorization data, the credentials, or the surrogates using the links available on the user login information page. Refreshing user data might be necessary if users are added to new groups or there is concern about the actual identity of the user on a long-lived IP surrogate.

Credential Refresh Time

You can set the credential refresh time with realms that can cache the username and password on the SG appliance. This is limited to realms that use Basic username and password credentials, including LDAP, RADIUS, XML, IWA (with Basic credentials), SiteMinder, and COREid.

Note: The local realm uses Basic credentials but does not need to cache them since they are stored already on the appliance.

Cached Usernames and Passwords

You can use a cached username and password to verify a user's credentials without having to verify the credentials with the offbox authentication server. Essentially, this reduces the load on the authentication server. For authentication modes that do not use surrogate credentials (that is, proxy or origin modes), this can greatly reduce the traffic to the authentication server.

The credential refresh time value determines how long a cached username and password is trusted. After that time has expired, the next transaction that needs credential authentication sends a request to the authentication server. A password different than the cached password also results in a request to the authentication server.

One-Time Passwords

One-time passwords are trusted for the credential refresh time. Only when the credential refresh time expires is the user challenged again.

Authorization Refresh Time

Realms (Local, LDAP, Windows SSO, Novell SSO, Certificate, XML, and Policy Substitution) that can do authorization and authentication separately can use the authorization refresh time value to manage the load on the authorization server.

These realms determine authorization data (group membership and attribute values) separately from authentication, allowing the time the authorization data is trusted to be increased or decreased.

For realms that must authenticate the user to determine authorization data, the authorization data is updated only when the user credentials are verified by the authentication server.

Section A: Managing Users***Surrogate Refresh Time***

This value manages how long surrogate credentials are trusted in a particular realm. The authentication mode determines the type of surrogate that is used.

- ❑ Cookie surrogates are used with one of the cookie authentication modes; IP address surrogates are used with one of the IP authentications modes; and the Auto authentication mode attempts to select the best surrogate for the current transaction.
- ❑ IP address surrogates work with all user agents, but require that each workstation has a unique IP address; they do not work with users behind a NAT. An IP surrogate authenticates all transactions from a given IP address as belonging to the user who was last authenticated at that IP address.

When a user is logged out, all surrogates are discarded, along with the cached credentials and authorization data.

For more information about using cookie and IP address surrogates, see “[Understanding Authentication Modes](#)” on page 32.

Policy

Policy has three properties for setting the refresh times for individual transactions.

- ❑ `authenticate.authorization_refresh_time(x)`
where `x` is the number of seconds to use for the authorization refresh time during this transaction. The refresh time cannot exceed the time configured in the realm; policy can be used only to reduce the authorization refresh time. You can use this property to dynamically force the user's authorization data to be refreshed.
- ❑ `authenticate.credential_refresh_time(x)`
where `x` is the number of seconds to use for the credential refresh time during this transaction. The refresh time cannot exceed the time configured in the realm; policy can be used only to reduce the credential refresh time. You can use this property to dynamically force the user's credentials to be refreshed.
- ❑ `authenticate.surrogate_refresh_time(x)`
where `x` is the number of seconds to use for the surrogate refresh time during this transaction. The refresh time cannot exceed the time configured in the realm; policy can be used only to reduce the surrogate refresh time. You can use this property to dynamically force the user's surrogate to be refreshed.

For information about using policy, refer to *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy* and *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

Related CLI Syntax to Manage Users

- ❑ To enter the manage users submode, use the following commands:

```
SGOS#(config) security users
SGOS#(config users)
```
- ❑ The following commands are available:

```
(config users) authorization-refresh {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name]
| realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}
(config users) credentials-refresh {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] |
realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}
```

Section A: Managing Users

```
(config users) log-out {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] | realms  
[realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}  
(config users) surrogates-refresh {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] |  
realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}  
(config users) view {detailed {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] |  
realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]} | ip-addresses  
prefix [realm_name] | realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name  
[realm_name]}
```

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies

Authentication means that the SG appliance requires proof of user identity in order to make decisions based on that identity. This proof is obtained by sending the client (a browser, for example) a *challenge*—a request to provide credentials. Browsers can respond to different kinds of credential challenges:

- ❑ Proxy-style challenges—Sent from proxy servers to clients that are explicitly proxied. In HTTP, the response code is 407.

An authenticating explicit proxy server sends a proxy-style challenge (407/Proxy-Authenticate) to the browser. The browser knows it is talking to a proxy and that the proxy wants proxy credentials. The browser responds to a proxy challenge with proxy credentials (Proxy-Authorization: header). The browser must be configured for explicit proxy in order for it to respond to a proxy challenge.

- ❑ Origin-style challenges—Sent from origin content servers (OCS), or from proxy servers impersonating a OCS. In HTTP, the response code is 401 Unauthorized.

In transparent proxy mode, the SG appliance uses the OCS authentication challenge (HTTP 401 and WWW-Authenticate)—acting as though it is the location from which the user initially requested a page. A transparent proxy, including a reverse proxy, must not use a proxy challenge, because the client might not be expecting it.

Once the browser supplies the credentials, the SG appliance authenticates them.

Understanding Authentication Modes

You can control the way the SG appliance interacts with the client for authentication by controlling the authentication mode. The mode specifies the challenge type and the accepted surrogate credential.

Note: *Challenge type* is the kind of challenge (for example, proxy or origin-ip-redirect) issued.

Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of the user's real credentials.

- ❑ **Auto:** The default; the mode is automatically selected, based on the request. Auto can choose any of **proxy**, **origin**, **origin-ip**, or **origin-cookie-redirect**, depending on the kind of connection (explicit or transparent) and the transparent authentication cookie configuration.
- ❑ **Proxy:** The SG appliance uses an explicit proxy challenge. No surrogate credentials are used. This is the typical mode for an authenticating explicit proxy. In some situations proxy challenges do not work; origin challenges are then issued.

If you have many requests consulting the back-end authentication authority (such as LDAP, RADIUS, or the BCAAA service), you can configure the SG appliance (and possibly the client) to use persistent connections. This dramatically reduces load on the back-end authentication authority and improves the all-around performance of the network.

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies

Important: Windows supports Kerberos authentication only to origin servers; proxy servers cannot participate. Therefore, explicit authentication modes are not compatible with Kerberos. However, because Internet Explorer automatically selects NTLM for an explicit challenge (where the browser is configured with the proxy as a proxy server), no special processing is required for explicit authentication. An origin redirect authentication mode, such as `authenticate.mode (origin-cookie-redirect)`, can be used to obtain Kerberos authentication when using an explicit proxy if the browser is configured to bypass the proxy for the virtual URL.

- **Proxy-IP:** The SG appliance uses an explicit proxy challenge and the client's IP address as a surrogate credential. Proxy-IP specifies an insecure forward proxy, possibly suitable for LANs of single-user workstations. In some situations proxy challenges do not work; origin challenges are then issued.
- **Origin:** The SG appliance acts like an OCS and issues OCS challenges. The authenticated connection serves as the surrogate credential.
- **Origin-IP:** The SG appliance acts like an OCS and issues OCS challenges. The client IP address is used as a surrogate credential. **Origin-IP** is used to support IWA authentication to the upstream device when the client cannot handle cookie credentials. This mode is primarily used for automatic downgrading, but it can be selected for specific situations.
- **Origin-cookie:** The SG appliance acts like an origin server and issues origin server challenges. A cookie is used as the surrogate credential. **Origin-cookie** is used in forward proxies to support pass-through authentication more securely than **origin-ip** if the client understands cookies. Only the HTTP and HTTPS protocols support cookies; other protocols are automatically downgraded to **origin-ip**.
This mode could also be used in reverse proxy situations if impersonation is not possible and the origin server requires authentication.
- **Origin-cookie-redirect:** The client is redirected to a virtual URL to be authenticated, and cookies are used as the surrogate credential. The SG appliance does not support origin-redirects with the CONNECT method. For forward proxies, only `origin-*-redirect` modes are supported for Kerberos/IWA authentication. (Any other mode uses NTLM authentication.)

Note: During cookie-based authentication, the redirect to strip the authentication cookie from the URL is logged as a 307 (or 302) TCP_DENIED.

- **Origin-IP-redirect:** The client is redirected to a virtual URL to be authenticated, and the client IP address is used as a surrogate credential. The SG appliance does not support origin-redirects with the CONNECT method. For forward proxies, only `origin-*-redirect` modes are supported for Kerberos/IWA authentication. (Any other mode uses NTLM authentication.)
- **SG2:** The mode is selected automatically, based on the request, and uses the SGOS 2.x-defined rules.
- **Form-IP:** A form is presented to collect the user's credentials. The form is presented whenever the user's credential cache entry expires.

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies

- Form-Cookie:** A form is presented to collect the user's credentials. The cookies are set on the OCS domain only, and the user is presented with the form for each new domain. This mode is most useful in reverse proxy scenarios where there are a limited number of domains.
- Form-Cookie-Redirect:** A form is presented to collect the user's credentials. The user is redirected to the authentication virtual URL before the form is presented. The authentication cookie is set on both the virtual URL and the OCS domain. The user is only challenged when the credential cache entry expires.
- Form-IP-redirect:** This is similar to **form-ip** except that the user is redirected to the authentication virtual URL before the form is presented.

Important: Modes that use an IP surrogate credential are insecure: After a user has authenticated from an IP address, all further requests from that IP address are treated as from that user. If the client is behind a NAT, or on a multi-user system, this can present a serious security problem.

The default value is `auto`.

For more information about using authentication modes, refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

Setting the Default Authenticate Mode Property

Setting the `authentication.mode` property selects a challenge type and surrogate credential combination. In `auto` mode, explicit IWA uses connection surrogate credentials. In `sg2` mode, explicit IWA uses IP surrogate credentials.

To configure the IWA default authenticate mode settings:

```
SGOS#(config) security default-authenticate-mode {auto | sg2}
```

Understanding Origin-Style Redirection

Some authentication modes redirect the browser to a *virtual authentication site* before issuing the origin-style challenge. This gives the user feedback as to which credentials are required, and makes it possible to (but does not require) send the credentials over a secure connection.

Since browser requests are transparently redirected to the SG appliance, the appliance intercepts the request for the virtual authentication site and issues the appropriate credential challenge. Thus, the challenge appears to come from the virtual site, which is usually named to make it clear to the user that SG credentials are requested.

If authentication is successful, the SG appliance establishes a surrogate credential and redirects the browser back to the original request, possibly with an encoded surrogate credential attached. This allows the SG appliance to see that the request has been authenticated, and so the request proceeds. The response to that request can also carry a surrogate credential.

To provide maximum flexibility, the virtual site is defined by a URL. Requests to that URL (only) are intercepted and cause authentication challenges; other URLs on the same host are treated normally. Thus, the challenge appears to come from a host that in all other respects behaves normally.

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies

Note: Sharing the virtual URL with other content on a real host requires additional configuration if the credential exchange is over SSL.

You can configure the virtual site to something that is meaningful for your company. The default, which requires no configuration, is `www.cfauth.com`. See “[Configuring Transparent Proxy Authentication](#)” on page 35 to set up a virtual URL for transparent proxy.

Tip: Using CONNECT and Origin-Style Redirection

You cannot use the CONNECT method with origin-style redirection or form redirect modes. An error message similar to the following is displayed:

```
Cannot use origin-redirect for CONNECT method (explicit proxy of https URL)
```

Instead, you can add policy to either bypass authentication on the CONNECT method, or use proxy authentication. For example:

```
<proxy>
    allow http.method=CONNECT authenticate.mode(proxy)
    authenticate(ldap)
    allow authenticate(cert) authenticate.mode(origin-cookie-redirect)
```

Selecting an Appropriate Surrogate Credential

IP surrogate credentials are less secure than cookie surrogate credentials and should be avoided if possible. If multiple clients share an IP address (such as when they are behind a NAT firewall or on a multi-user system), the IP surrogate mechanism cannot distinguish between those users.

Configuring Transparent Proxy Authentication

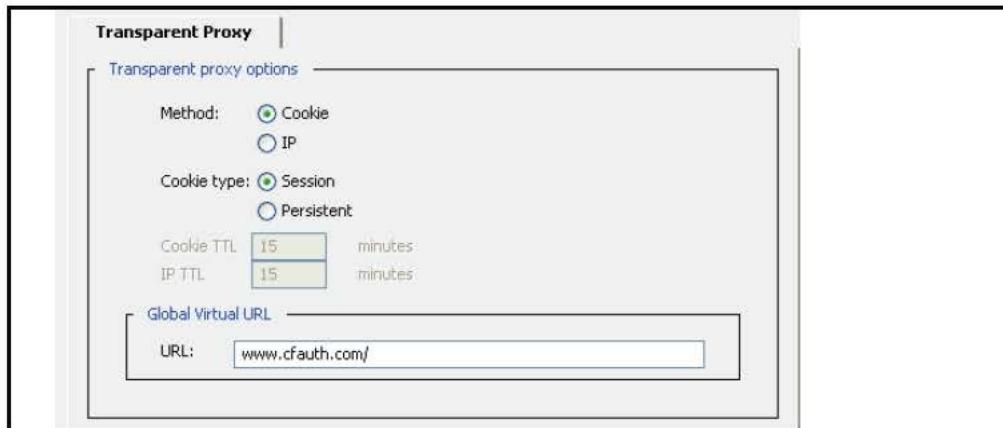
The following sections provide general instructions on configuring for transparent proxy authentication.

In addition to configuring transparent proxy authentication, you must also enable a transparent proxy port before the transparent proxy is functional. To enable a transparent proxy port, refer to *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*.

To set transparent proxy options:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Transparent Proxy**.

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies



2. Select the transparent proxy method—Cookie-based or IP address-based. The default is **Cookie**.

If you select **Cookie**, the **Cookie Type** radio buttons are available. Click either: **Session**, for cookies that are deleted at the end of a session, or **Persistent**, for cookies that remain on a client machine until the cookie TTL (Time To Live) is reached or the credentials cache is flushed. The default is Session.

If you select **Persistent Cookies**, enter the Cookie TTL. If you choose **IP** address-based, enter the IP address TTL. The default for each is 15 minutes.

Note: A value of 0 (zero) for the IP address TTL re-prompts the user for credentials once the specified cache duration for the particular realm has expired.

For authentication modes that make use of IP surrogate credentials, once the IP address TTL expires the proxy re-challenges all client requests that do not contain credentials for which an IP surrogate credential cache entry previously existed.

If at this point the client supplied a different set of credentials than previously used to authenticate—for which an entry in the user credential cache still exists—the proxy fails authentication. This is to prevent any another client to potentially gain network access by impersonating another user by supplying his or her credentials. However, once the user credential cache entry's TTL has expired, you can supply a different set of credentials than previously used for authentication.

3. Select the Virtual URL. The default is `www.cfauth.com`. Blue Coat recommends you change the virtual hostname to something meaningful to you, preferably the IP address of the SG appliance, unless you are doing secure credentials over SSL. Using the IP address of the SG appliance enables you to be sure that the correct SG appliance is addressed in a cluster configuration.
4. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Related CLI Syntax to Set Transparent Proxy Options

```
SGOS# (config) security transparent-proxy-auth method {cookie | ip}
```

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies

Permitting Users to Login with Authentication or Authorization Failures

You can configure policy (VPM or CPL) to attempt user authentication while permitting specific authentication or authorization errors. The policy can specify that, after certain authentication or authorization failures, the user transaction should be allowed to proceed and not be terminated.

Note: For a list of permitted authentication and authorization errors, see [Appendix E: "Authentication and Authorization Errors" on page 247](#).

Permitted Errors

Authentication and authorization can be permitted to fail if policy has been written to allow specific failures. The behavior is as follows:

- ❑ Authentication Failures: After an authentication failure occurs, the authentication error is checked against the list of errors that policy specifies as permitted.
 - If the error is not on the list, the transaction is terminated.
 - If the error is on the list, the transaction is allowed to proceed although the user is unauthenticated. Because the transaction is not considered authenticated, the `authenticated=yes` policy condition evaluates to false and the user has no username, group information, or surrogate credentials. Policy that uses the user, group, domain, or attribute conditions does not match.
- ❑ Authorization Failures: After an authorization failure occurs, the authorization error is checked against the list of errors that policy specifies as permitted.
 - If the error is not on the list, the transaction is terminated.
 - If the error is on the list, the transaction is allowed to proceed and the user is marked as not having authorization data.
 - If a user is successfully authenticated but does not have authorization data, the `authenticated=yes` condition evaluates to true and the user has valid authentication credentials.
 - The `user.authorization_error=any` is evaluate to true if user authorization failed, the user object contains username and domain information, but not group or attribute information. As a result, policy using user or domain actions still match, but policy using group or attribute conditions do not.

To view all authentication and authorization errors, use the `SGOS# show security authentication-errors` CLI command.

Policy Used with Permitted Errors

Before creating policy to permit errors, you must:

- ❑ Identify the type of access the transactions should be permitted.
- ❑ Identify under which circumstances transactions can proceed even if authentication or authorization fails.
- ❑ Identify which errors correspond to those circumstances.

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies

You can use the advanced authentication URL (**Statistics > Advanced > Show Authentication Error Statistics**) as a troubleshooting guide. The policy substitutions `$ (x-sc-authentication-error)` and `$ (x-sc-authorization-error)` can also be used to log the errors on a per-transaction basis.

Policy conditions and properties that are available include:

- `authenticate.tolerate_error()`
- `authorize.tolerate_error()`
- `user.authentication_error=`
- `user.authorization_error=`
- `has_authorization_data=`

Note: You are not limited to these conditions and properties in creating policy. For a discussion and a complete list of policy conditions and properties you can use, refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

You can also use the following policy substitutions:

- `x-sc-authentication-error`: If authentication has failed, this is the error corresponding to the failure. If authentication has not been attempted, the value is `not_attempted`. If authentication has succeeded, the value is `none`.
- `x-sc-authorization-error`: If authorization has failed, this is the error corresponding to the failure. If authorization has not been attempted, the value is `not_attempted`. If authorization has succeeded, the value is `none`.

Using Guest Authentication

Using policy (VPM or CPL), you can allow a user to log in as a guest user. Guest authentication allows you to assign a username to a user who would have otherwise been considered unauthenticated.

Note: You can use guest authentication with or without default groups. If you use default groups, you can assign guest users to groups for tracking and statistics purposes. For more information about default groups, see “[Using Default Groups](#)” on page 39.

In the case of guest authentication, a user is not actually authenticated against the realm, but is:

- Assigned the specified guest username
- Marked as authenticated in the specified realm
- Marked as a guest user
- Tracked in access logs

Since the user is not actually authenticated, the username does not have to be valid in that realm.

Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies

Using Policy with Guest Authentication

Before creating policy for guest authentication:

- Determine the circumstances in which guest access is permitted. Guest users are typically allowed in circumstances where no authentication is needed.
- Determine authentication policy. Will the realms attempt to authenticate users first and fallback to guest authentication or authenticate users as guest users without attempting authentication?

Note: If a transaction matches both a regular authentication action and guest authentication action, regular authentication is attempted first. This can result in a user challenge before dropping back to guest authentication. If you inadvertently enter invalid credentials and so drop back to guest access, you must log out as guest or close and reopen the browser if using session cookies or connection surrogates. You then can enter the correct credentials to obtain regular access.

Write the corresponding policy. Policy available for guest authentication includes:

- `authenticate.guest`
- `user.is_guest`
- `authenticated`

Note: You are not limited to these conditions and properties in creating policy. For a complete list of policy conditions and properties you can use, refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

Using Policy Substitutions with Guest Authentication

The following policy substitution was created for use with guest authentication.

- `x-cs-user-type`: If the user is an authenticated guest user, the value is `guest`. If the user is an authenticated non-guest user, the value is `authenticated`. If the user is not authenticated, the value is `unauthenticated`.

You are not limited to this substitution, and you can use the substitution in other circumstances. For a complete list of policy substitutions, refer to access log substitutions in *Volume 8: Access Logging*.

Using Default Groups

You can use default groups with any realm, and they can be used when authorization succeeds, fails or wasn't attempted at all. Default groups allow you to assign users to groups and use those groups in reporting and subsequent authorization decisions.

Note: You can use default groups in conjunction with guest users (see “[Using Guest Authentication](#)” on page 38) or it can be used with regular user authentication.

[Section B: Using Authentication and Proxies](#)

Using Policy with Default Groups

Before creating policy for default groups, you must determine which set of groups are assigned as default.

You can specify a single or multiple groups here. In most cases, only a single group will be required, but occasionally you might need to assign the user to multiple groups:

- For extra reporting abilities.
- If the policy is structured in a way that users should receive the same access as if they belonged in multiple different groups.

Policy available for default groups includes:

- `group`
- `authorize.add_group`

Note: You are not limited to these conditions and properties in creating policy. For a complete list of policy conditions and properties you can use, refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

Section C: Using SSL with Authentication and Authorization Services

Section C: Using SSL with Authentication and Authorization Services

Blue Coat recommends that you use SSL during authentication to secure your user credentials. Blue Coat supports SSL between the client and the SG appliance and between the SG appliance and LDAP and IWA authentication servers.

Using SSL Between the Client and the SG Appliance

To configure SSL to use origin-cookie-redirect or origin-ip-redirect challenges, you must:

- Specify a virtual URL with the HTTPS protocol (for example, https://virtual_address).
- Create a keyring and certificate on the SG appliance.
- Create an HTTPS service to run on the port specified in the virtual URL and to use the keyring you just created.

Note: You can use SSL between the client and the SG appliance for origin-style challenges on transparent and explicit connections (SSL for explicit proxy authentication is not supported).

In addition, if you use a forward proxy, the challenge type must use redirection; it cannot be an origin or origin-ip challenge type.

When redirected to the virtual URL, the user is prompted to accept the certificate offered by the SG appliance (unless the certificate is signed by a trusted certificate authority). If accepted, the authentication conversation between the SG appliance and the user is encrypted using the certificate.

Note: If the hostname does not resolve to the IP address of the SG appliance, then the network configuration must redirect traffic for that port to the appliance. Also, if you use the IP address as the virtual hostname, you might have trouble getting a certificate signed by a CA-Certificate authority (which might not be important).

For information about creating a keyring and a certificate, refer to *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*.

You can use SSL between the SG appliance and IWA and LDAP authentication servers. For more information, see “[SSL Between the SG Appliance and the Authentication Server](#)” on page 12.

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations

Once hardware configuration is complete and the system configured to use transparent or explicit proxies, use CPL or VPM to provide on-going management of proxy operations.

Using CPL

Below is a table of all commands available for use in proxy layers of a policy. If a condition, property, or action does not specify otherwise, it can be used only in <Proxy> layers. For information about creating effective CPL, refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

Table 3-1. CPL Commands Available in the <Proxy> Layer

| <Proxy> Layer Conditions | Meaning |
|---|--|
| admin.access= | Tests the administrative access requested by the current transaction. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| attribute.name= | Tests if the current transaction is authenticated in a RADIUS or LDAP realm, and if the authenticated user has the specified attribute with the specified value. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| authenticated= | Tests if authentication was requested and the credentials could be verified; otherwise, false. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| bitrate= | Tests if a streaming transaction requests bandwidth within the specified range or an exact match. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| category= | Tests if the content categories of the requested URL match the specified category, or if the URL has not been categorized. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| client_address= | Tests the IP address of the client. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| client.connection.negotiated_cipher= | Test the cipher suite negotiated with a securely connected client. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| client.connection.negotiated_cipher.strength= | Test the cipher strength negotiated with a securely connected client. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| client.host= | Test the hostname of the client (obtained through RDNS). Can also be used in <Admin>, <Forward>, and <Exception> layers. |
| client.host.has_name= | Test the status of the RDNS performed to determine 'client.host'. Can also be used in <Admin>, <Forward>, and <Exception> layers. |
| client_protocol= | Tests true if the client transport protocol matches the specification. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| condition= | Tests if the specified defined condition is true. Can be used in all layers. |
| console_access= | (This trigger was formerly admin=yes no.) Tests if the current request is destined for the admin layer. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations

Table 3-1. CPL Commands Available in the <Proxy> Layer (Continued)

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| content_management= | (This trigger was formerly content_admin=yes no.) Tests if the current request is a content-management transaction. Can also be used in <Exception> and <Forward> layers. |
| date [.utc] = | Tests true if the current time is within the startdate..enddate range, inclusive. Can be used in all layers. |
| day= | Tests if the day of the month is in the specified range or an exact match. Can be used in all layers. |
| exception.id= | Indicates that the requested object was not served, providing this specific exception page. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| ftp.method= | Tests ftp request methods against any of a well-known set of FTP methods. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |
| group= | Tests if the authenticated condition is set to yes, the client is authenticated, and the client belongs to the specified group. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| has_attribute.name= | Tests if the current transaction is authenticated in an LDAP realm and if the authenticated user has the specified LDAP attribute. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| hour= | Tests if the time of day is in the specified range or an exact match. Can be used in all layers. |
| http.method= | Tests HTTP request methods against any of a well known set of HTTP methods. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |
| http.method.regex= | Test the HTTP method using a regular expression. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| http.request_line.regex= | Test the HTTP protocol request line. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| http.request.version= | Tests the version of HTTP used by the client in making the request to the SG appliance. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |
| http.response_code= | Tests true if the current transaction is an HTTP transaction and the response code received from the origin server is as specified. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |
| http.response.version= | Tests the version of HTTP used by the origin server to deliver the response to the SG appliance. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |
| http.transparent_authentication= | This trigger evaluates to true if HTTP uses transparent proxy authentication for this request. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |
| im.buddy_id= | Tests the buddy_id associated with the IM transaction. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| im.chat_room.conference= | Tests whether the chat room associated with the transaction has the conference attribute set. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| im.chat_room.id= | Tests the chat room ID associated with the transaction. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| im.chat_room.invite_only= | Tests whether the chat room associated with the transaction has the invite_only attribute set. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations

Table 3-1. CPL Commands Available in the <Proxy> Layer (Continued)

| | |
|--|--|
| <code>im.chat_room.type=</code> | Tests whether the chat room associated with the transaction is public or private. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.chat_room.member=</code> | Tests whether the chat room associated with the transaction has a member matching the specified criterion. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.chat_room.voice_enabled=</code> | Tests whether the chat room associated with the transaction is voice enabled. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.client=</code> | Test the type of IM client in use. Can also be used in <Exception>, <Forward>, and <Cache> layers. |
| <code>im.file.extension=</code> | Tests the file extension. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.file.name=</code> | Tests the file name (the last component of the path), including the extension. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.file.path=</code> | Tests the file path against the specified criterion. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.file.size=</code> | Performs a signed 64-bit range test. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.message.reflected</code> | Test whether IM reflection occurred. Can also be used in <Exception> and <Forward> layers. |
| <code>im.message.route=</code> | Tests how the IM message reaches its recipients. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.message.size=</code> | Performs a signed 64-bit range test. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.message.text.substring=</code> | Performs a signed 64-bit range test. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.message.opcode=</code> | Tests the value of an opcode associated with an <code>im.method</code> of <code>unknown_send</code> or <code>unknown_receive</code> . |
| <code>im.message.type=</code> | Tests the message type. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.method=</code> | Tests the method associated with the IM transaction. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |
| <code>im.user_id=</code> | Tests the <code>user_id</code> associated with the IM transaction. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>live=</code> | Tests if the streaming content is a live stream. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>minute=</code> | Tests if the minute of the hour is in the specified range or an exact match. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>month=</code> | Tests if the month is in the specified range or an exact match. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>proxy.address=</code> | Tests the IP address of the network interface card (NIC) on which the request arrives. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| <code>proxy.card=</code> | Tests the ordinal number of the network interface card (NIC) used by a request. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| <code>proxy.port=</code> | Tests if the IP port used by a request is within the specified range or an exact match. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations**Table 3-1. CPL Commands Available in the <Proxy> Layer (Continued)**

| | |
|--|--|
| <code>raw_url</code> | Test the value of the raw request URL. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>raw_url.host</code> | Test the value of the 'host' component of the raw request URL. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>raw_url.path</code> | Test the value of the 'path' component of the raw request URL. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>raw_url.pathquery</code> | Test the value of the 'path and query' component of the raw request URL. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>raw_url.port</code> | Test the value of the 'port' component of the raw request URL. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>raw_url.query</code> | Test the value of the 'query' component of the raw request URL. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>realm=</code> | Tests if the authenticated condition is set to yes, the client is authenticated, and the client has logged into the specified realm. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| <code>release.id=</code> | Tests the SG release ID. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>request.header_address.header_name=</code> | Tests if the specified request header can be parsed as an IP address. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>request.header.header_name=</code> | Tests the specified request header (<code>header_name</code>) against a regular expression. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>request.header.header_name.count</code> | Test the number of header values in the request for the given <code>header_name</code> . Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>request.header.header_name.length</code> | Test the total length of the header values for the given <code>header_name</code> . Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>request.header.Referer.url.host.has_name=</code> | Test whether the Referer URL has a resolved DNS hostname. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>request.header.Referer.url.is_absolute</code> | Test whether the Referer URL is expressed in absolute form. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>request.raw_headers.count</code> | Test the total number of HTTP request headers. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>request.raw_headers.length</code> | Test the total length of all HTTP request headers. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>request.raw_headers.regex</code> | Test the value of all HTTP request headers with a regular expression. Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>request.x_header.header_name.count</code> | Test the number of header values in the request for the given <code>header_name</code> . Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>request.x_header.header_name.length</code> | Test the total length of the header values for the given <code>header_name</code> . Can also be used in <Exception> layers. |
| <code>response.header.header_name=</code> | Tests the specified response header (<code>header_name</code>) against a regular expression. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations**Table 3-1. CPL Commands Available in the <Proxy> Layer (Continued)**

| | |
|---|--|
| <code>response.x_header. header_name=</code> | Tests the specified response header (<i>header_name</i>) against a regular expression. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>server_url[.case_ sensitive .no_lookup]=</code> | Tests if a portion of the requested URL exactly matches the specified pattern. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>socks.accelerated=</code> | Controls the SOCKS proxy handoff to other protocol agents. |
| <code>socks.method=</code> | Tests the protocol method name associated with the transaction. Can also be used in <Cache> and <Exception> layers. |
| <code>socks.version=</code> | Switches between SOCKS 4/4a and 5. Can also be used in <Exception> and <Forward> layers. |
| <code>streaming.content=</code> | (This trigger has been renamed from streaming.) Can also be used in <Cache>, <Exception>, and <Forward> layers. |
| <code>time=</code> | Tests if the time of day is in the specified range or an exact match. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>tunneled=</code> | |
| <code>url.domain=</code> | Tests if the requested URL, including the domain-suffix portion, matches the specified pattern. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.extension=</code> | Tests if the filename extension at the end of the path matches the specified string. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.host=</code> | Tests if the host component of the requested URL matches the IP address or domain name. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.host.has_name</code> | Test whether the request URL has a resolved DNS hostname. Can also be used in <Exception> layers |
| <code>url.is_absolute</code> | Test whether the request URL is expressed in absolute form. Can also be used in <Exception> layers |
| <code>url.host.is_numeric=</code> | This is true if the URL host was specified as an IP address. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.host.no_name=</code> | This is true if no domain name can be found for the URL host. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.host.regex=</code> | Tests if the specified regular expression matches a substring of the domain name component of the request URL. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.host.suffix=</code> | Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.path=</code> | Tests if a prefix of the complete path component of the requested URL, as well as any query component, matches the specified string. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.path.regex=</code> | Tests if the regex matches a substring of the path component of the request URL. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.port=</code> | Tests if the port number of the requested URL is within the specified range or an exact match. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.query.regex=</code> | Tests if the regex matches a substring of the query string component of the request URL. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations

Table 3-1. CPL Commands Available in the <Proxy> Layer (Continued)

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>url.regex=</code> | Tests if the requested URL matches the specified pattern. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>url.scheme=</code> | Tests if the scheme of the requested URL matches the specified string. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>user=</code> | Tests the authenticated user name of the transaction. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| <code>user.domain=</code> | Tests if the authenticated condition is set to yes, the client is authenticated, the logged-into realm is an IWA realm, and the domain component of the user name is the specified domain. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| <code>weekday=</code> | Tests if the day of the week is in the specified range or an exact match. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>year=</code> | Tests if the year is in the specified range or an exact match. Can be used in all layers. |

Table 3-2. Properties Available in the <Proxy> Layer

| <Proxy> Layer Properties | Meaning |
|---|--|
| <code>action.action_label()</code> | Selectively enables or disables a specified define action block. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>allow</code> | Allows the transaction to be served. Can be used in all layers except <Exception> and <Forward> layers. |
| <code>always_verify()</code> | Determines whether each request for the objects at a particular URL must be verified with the origin server. |
| <code>authenticate()</code> | Identifies a realm that must be authenticated against. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| <code>authenticate.force()</code> | Either disables proxy authentication for the current transaction (using the value no) or requests proxy authentication using the specified authentication realm. Can also be used in <Admin> layers. |
| <code>authenticate.form()</code> | When forms-based authentication is in use, authenticate.form() selects the form used to challenge the user. |
| <code>authenticate.mode(auto)</code> <code>authenticate.mode(sg2)</code> | Setting the authentication.mode property selects a challenge type and surrogate credential combination. In auto mode, explicit IWA uses connection surrogate credentials. In sg2.mode, explicit IWA uses IP surrogate credentials. |
| <code>authenticate.redirect_stored_requests</code> | Sets whether requests stored during forms-based authentication can be redirected if the upstream host issues a redirecting response. |
| <code>bypass_cache()</code> | Determines whether the cache is bypassed for a request. |
| <code>check_authorization()</code> | In connection with CAD (Caching Authenticated Data) and CPAD (Caching Proxy Authenticated Data) support, check_authorization() is used when you know that the upstream device will sometimes (not always or never) require the user to authenticate and be authorized for this object. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations**Table 3-2. Properties Available in the <Proxy> Layer (Continued)**

| | |
|--|--|
| <code>delete_on_abandonment()</code> | If set to yes, then if all clients requesting an object close their connections prior to the object being delivered, the object fetch from the origin server is abandoned. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>deny</code> | Denies service. Can be used in all layers except <Exception> and <Forward> layers. |
| <code>dynamic_bypass()</code> | Used to indicate that a particular transparent request should not be handled by the proxy, but instead be subjected to our dynamic bypass methodology. |
| <code>exception()</code> | Indicates not to serve the requested object, but instead serve this specific exception page. Can be used in all layers except <Exception> layers. |
| <code>ftp.server_connection()</code> | Determines when the control connection to the server is established. |
| <code>ftp.welcome_banner()</code> | Sets the welcome banner for a proxied FTP transaction. |
| <code>http.client.recv.timeout</code> | Sets the socket timeout for receiving bytes from the client. |
| <code>http.request.version()</code> | The <code>http.request.version()</code> property sets the version of the HTTP protocol to be used in the request to the origin content server or upstream proxy. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>http.response.parse_meta_tag.Cache-Control()</code> | Controls whether the 'Cache-Control' META Tag is parsed in an HTML response body. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>http.response.parse_meta_tag.Expires</code> | Controls whether the 'Expires' META Tag is parsed in an HTML response body. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>http.response.parse_meta_tag.Pragma.no-cache</code> | Controls whether the 'Pragma: no-cache' META Tag is parsed in an HTML response body. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>http.response.version()</code> | The <code>http.response.version()</code> property sets the version of the HTTP protocol to be used in the response to the client's user agent. |
| <code>http.server.recv.timeout()</code> | Sets the socket timeout for receiving bytes from the upstream host. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>im.block_encryption</code> | Prevents the encryption of AOL IM messages by modifying messages during IM login time. |
| <code>im.reflect</code> | Sets whether IM reflection should be attempted. |
| <code>im.strip_attachments()</code> | Determines whether attachments are stripped from IM messages. |
| <code>im.transport</code> | Sets the type of upstream connection to make for IM traffic. |
| <code>log.suppress.field-id()</code> | The <code>log.suppress.field-id()</code> controls suppression of the specified field-id in all facilities (individual logs that contain all properties for that specific log in one format). Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>log.suppress.field-id [log_list]()</code> | The <code>log.suppress.field-id [log_list]()</code> property controls suppression of the specified field-id in the specified facilities. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>log.rewrite.field-id()</code> | The <code>log.rewrite.field-id()</code> property controls rewrites of a specific log field in all facilities. Can be used in all layers. |

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations**Table 3-2. Properties Available in the <Proxy> Layer (Continued)**

| | |
|--|---|
| <code>log.rewrite.field-id [log_list]()</code> | The <code>log.rewrite.field-id [log_list]()</code> property controls rewrites of a specific log field in a specified list of log facilities. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>reflect_ip()</code> | Determines how the client IP address is presented to the origin server for explicitly proxied requests. Can also be used in <Forward> layers. |
| <code>request.filter_service()</code> | Websense is the built in service name for the off-box content filtering service. Can also be used in <Cache> layers. |
| <code>request.icap_service()</code> | Determines whether a request from a client should be processed by an external ICAP service before going out. |
| <code>shell.prompt</code> | Sets the prompt for a proxied Shell transaction. |
| <code>shell.realm_banner</code> | Sets the realm banner for a proxied Shell transaction. |
| <code>shell.welcome_banner</code> | Sets the welcome banner for a proxied Shell transaction. |
| <code>socks.accelerate()</code> | The <code>socks.accelerate</code> property controls the SOCKS proxy handoff to other protocol agents. |
| <code>socks.authenticate()</code> | The same realms can be used for SOCKS proxy authentication as can be used for regular proxy authentication. |
| <code>socks.authenticate.force()</code> | The <code>socks.authenticate.force()</code> property forces the realm to be authenticated through SOCKS. |

Table 3-3. Actions Available in the <Proxy> Layer

| <Proxy> Layer Actions | Meaning |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code>log_message()</code> | Writes the specified string to the SG event log. Can be used in all layers except <Admin>. |
| <code>notify_email()</code> | Sends an e-mail notification to the list of recipients specified in the Event Log mail configuration. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>notify_snmp()</code> | The SNMP trap is sent when the transaction terminates. Can be used in all layers. |
| <code>redirect()</code> | Ends the current HTTP transaction and returns an HTTP redirect response to the client. |
| <code>transform</code> | Invokes the active content or URL rewrite transformer. |

Section D: Creating a Proxy Layer to Manage Proxy Operations

Chapter 4: Understanding and Managing X.509 Certificates

Blue Coat uses certificates for various applications, including:

- authenticating the identity of a server
- authenticating an SG appliance
- securing an intranet
- encrypting data

The certificates Blue Coat uses are X.509 certificates. X.509 is a cryptographic standard for public key infrastructure (PKI) that specifies standard formats for public key certificates. Several RFCs and books exist on the public key cryptographic system (PKCS). This discussion of the elements of PKCS is relevant to their implementation in SGOS.

- [Section A: "Concepts" on page 52](#)
- ["Section B: Using Keyrings and SSL Certificates" on page 55](#)
- [Section C: "Managing Certificates" on page 59](#)
- [Section D: "Using External Certificates" on page 65](#)
- ["Section E: Advanced Configuration" on page 67](#)

Section A: Concepts

Section A: Concepts

This section discusses concepts surrounding certificates and SGOS.

Public Keys and Private Keys

In PKCS systems, the intended recipient of encrypted data generates a private/public keypair, and publishes the public key, keeping the private key secret. The sender encrypts the data with the recipient's public key, and sends the encrypted data to the recipient. The recipient uses the corresponding private key to decrypt the data.

For two-way encrypted communication, the endpoints can exchange public keys, or one endpoint can choose a symmetric encryption key, encrypt it with the other endpoint's public key, and send it.

Certificates

The SGOS software uses:

- SSL Certificates.
- CA Certificates.
- External Certificates.

You can also use wildcard certificates during HTTPS termination. Microsoft's implementation of wildcard certificates is as described in RFC 2595, allowing an * (asterisk) in the leftmost-element of the server's common name only. For information on wildcards supported by Internet Explorer, refer to the Microsoft knowledge base, article: 258858. Any SSL certificate can contain a common name with wildcard characters.

SSL Certificates

SSL certificates are used to authenticate the identity of a server or a client. A certificate is confirmation of the association between an identity (expressed as a string of characters) and a public key. If a party can prove they hold the corresponding private key, you can conclude that the party is who the certificate says it is. The certificate contains other information, such as its expiration date.

The association between a public key and a particular server is done by generating a certificate signing request using the server's or client's public key. A certificate signing authority (CA) verifies the identity of the server or client and generates a signed certificate. The resulting certificate can then be offered by the server to clients (or from clients to servers) who can recognize the CA's signature. Such use of certificates issued by CAs has become the primary infrastructure for authentication of communications over the Internet.

The SG trusts all root CA certificates trusted by Internet Explorer and Firefox. The list is updated periodically to be in sync with the latest versions of IE and Firefox.

CA certificates installed on the SG are used to verify the certificates presented by HTTPS servers and the client certificates presented by browsers. Browsers offer a certificate if the server is configured to ask for one and an appropriate certificate is available to the browser.

Section A: Concepts

CA Certificates

CA certificates are certificates that belong to certificate authorities. CA certificates are used by SGdevices to verify X.509 certificates presented by a client or a server during secure communication. SG appliances are pre-installed with the most common CA certificates.

SG appliances come with many popular CA certificates already installed. You can review these certificates using the Management Console or the CLI. You can also add certificates for your own internal certificate authorities.

External Certificates

An external certificate is any X509 certificate for which the SG appliance does not have the private key. The certificate can be used to encrypt data, such as access logs, with a public key so that it can only be decrypted by someone who has the corresponding private key. Refer to *Volume 8: Access Logging* for information about encrypting access logs.

Keyrings

A keyring contains a public/private keypair. It can also contain a certificate signing request or a signed certificate. Keyrings are named, can be created, deleted and viewed; there are built-in keyrings for specified purposes. For information on managing keyrings, see [Section B: "Using Keyrings and SSL Certificates" on page 55](#).

Cipher Suites Supported by SGOS Software

A cipher suite specifies the algorithms used to secure an SSL connection. When a client makes an SSL connection to a server, it sends a list of the cipher suites that it supports.

The server compares this list with its own supported cipher suites and chooses the first cipher suite proposed by the client that they both support. Both the client and server then use this cipher suite to secure the connection.

Note: You can delete cipher suites that you do not trust. However, SGOS does not provide any mechanism to change the ordering of the ciphers used.

All cipher suites supported by the SG appliance use the RSA key exchange algorithm, which uses the public key encoded in the server's certificate to encrypt a piece of secret data for transfer from the client to server. This secret is then used at both endpoints to compute encryption keys.

By default, the SG appliance is configured to allow SSLv2 and v3 as well as TLSv1 traffic. The cipher suites available for use differ depending on whether you configure SSL for version 2, version 3, TLS, or a combination of these.

Table 4-1. Cipher Suites Shipped with the SG Appliance

| SGOS Cipher # | Cipher Name | Strength | Exportable | Description |
|---------------|--------------|----------|------------|-------------------|
| 1 | RC4-MD5 | Medium | No | 128-bit key size. |
| 2 | RC4-SHA | Medium | No | 128-bit key size. |
| 3 | DES-CBC3-SHA | High | No | 168-bit key size. |

Section A: Concepts

Table 4-1. Cipher Suites Shipped with the SG Appliance (Continued)

| SGOS Cipher # | Cipher Name | Strength | Exportable | Description |
|---------------|---------------------|----------|------------|-------------------|
| 4 | DES-CBC3-MD5 | High | No | 168-bit key size. |
| 5 | RC2-CBC-MD5 | Medium | No | 128-bit key size. |
| 6 | RC4-64-MD5 | Low | No | 64-bit key size. |
| 7 | DES-CBC-SHA | Low | No | 56-bit key size. |
| 8 | DES-CBC-MD5 | Low | No | 56-bit key size. |
| 9 | EXP1024-RC4-MD5 | Export | Yes | 56-bit key size. |
| 10 | EXP1024-RC4-SHA | Export | Yes | 56-bit key size. |
| 11 | EXP1024-RC2-CBC-MD5 | Export | Yes | 56-bit key size. |
| 12 | EXP1024-DES-CBC-SHA | Export | Yes | 56-bit key size. |
| 13 | EXP-RC4-MD5 | Export | Yes | 40-bit key size. |
| 14 | EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5 | Export | Yes | 40-bit key size. |
| 15 | EXP-DES-CBC-SHA | Export | Yes | 40-bit key size. |
| 16 | AES128-SHA | Medium | No | 128-bit key size. |
| 17 | AES256-SHA | High | No | 256-bit key size. |

Cipher Suite configuration is discussed in “[Changing the Cipher Suites of the SSL Client](#)” on page 234.

Server-Gated Cryptography and International Step-Up

Due to US export restrictions, international access to a secure site requires that the site negotiates export-only ciphers. These are relatively weak ciphers ranging from 40-bit to 56-bit key lengths, and are vulnerable to attack.

Server Gated Cryptography (SGC) is a Microsoft extension to the certificate that allows the client receiving the certificate to first negotiate export strength ciphers, followed by a re-negotiation with strong ciphers. Netscape has a similar extension called International Step-up.

SGOS supports both SGC and International Step-up in its SSL implementation. There are, however, known anomalies in Internet Explorer's implementation that can cause SSL negotiation to fail. Refer to the following two documents for more detail and check for recent updates on the Microsoft support site.

<http://support.microsoft.com/support/kb/articles/Q249/8/63.ASP>
<http://support.microsoft.com/support/kb/articles/Q244/3/02.ASP>

To take advantage of this technology, SGOS supports VeriSign's Global ID Certificate product. The Global ID certificate contains the extra information necessary to implement SGC and International Step-up.

Section B: Using Keyrings and SSL Certificates

Keyrings are virtual containers, holding a public/private keypair with a customized keylength and a certificate or certificate signing request.

Certificates can be meant for internal use (self-signed) or they can be meant for external use.

In general, SSL certificates involve three parties:

- The subject of the certificate.
- The Certificate Authority (CA), which signs the certificate, attesting to the binding between the public key in the certificate and the subject.
- The "relying party," which is the entity that trusts the CA and relies on the certificate to authenticate the subject.

Keyrings and certificates are used in:

- Encrypting data.
- Digitally Signing Access Logs.
- Authenticating end users.
- Authenticating an SG appliance.

The steps in creating keyrings and certificates include:

- Create a keyring. A default keyring is shipped with the system and is used for accessing the Management Console, although you can use others. You can also use the default keyring for other purposes. You can create other keyrings for each SSL service. (See [“Creating a Keyring”](#) on page 56.)

Note: You can also import keyrings. For information on importing keyrings, see [“Importing an Existing Keypair and Certificate”](#) on page 67.

- (Optional) Create Certificate Signing Requests (CSRs) to be sent to Certificate Signing Authorities (CAs).
- Import X.509 certificates issued by trusted CA authorities for external use and associate them with the keyring. (See [“Managing SSL Certificates”](#) on page 60.)
-or-
Create certificates and associate them with the keyring. (See [“Creating Self-Signed SSL Certificates”](#) on page 61.)
- (Optional, if using SSL Certificates from CAs) Import Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) so the SG appliance can verify that certificates are still valid.
- Creating an HTTP Reverse Proxy Service and associating the keyring with the service. (Refer to *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*.)

Note: These steps must be done using a secure connection such as HTTPS, SSH, or a serial console.

Section B: Using Keyrings and SSL Certificates

Creating a Keyring

The SG appliance ships with three keyrings already created:

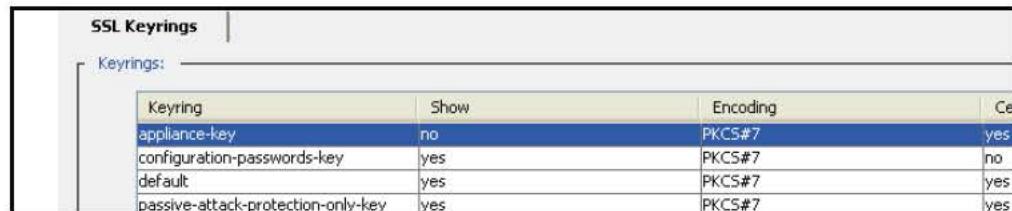
- default: The default keyring contains a certificate and an automatically-generated keypair. The default keyring is intended for securely accessing the SG appliance Management Console. Create an additional keyring for each HTTPS service defined.
- configuration-passwords-key: The configuration-passwords-key keyring contains a keypair but does not contain a certificate. This keyring is used to encrypt passwords in the `show config` command and should not be used for other purposes.
- appliance-key: The appliance-key keyring contains an internally-generated keypair. If the SG appliance is authenticated (has obtained a certificate from the Blue Coat CA appliance-certificate server), that certificate is associated with this keyring, which is used to authenticate the device. (For more information on authenticating the SG appliance, refer to *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*.)

Note: The appliance-key keyring is used by the system. It is not available for other purposes.

If an origin content server requires a client certificate and no keyring is associated with the SG appliance SSL client, the HTTPS connection fails. For information on using the SSL client, see [Appendix C: "Managing the SSL Client" on page 233](#).

To create a keyring:

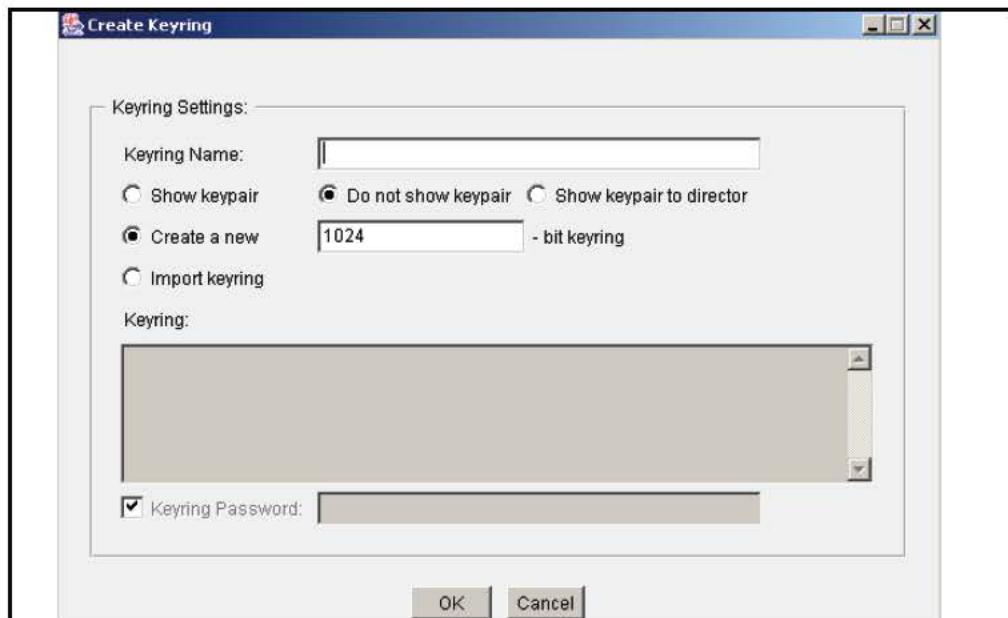
1. Select **Configuration > SSL > Keyrings > SSL Keyrings**.



| SSL Keyrings | | | | |
|------------------------------------|------|----------|-----|----|
| Keyrings: | | | | |
| Keyring | Show | Encoding | Ca | Ce |
| appliance-key | no | PKCS#7 | yes | |
| configuration-passwords-key | yes | PKCS#7 | no | |
| default | yes | PKCS#7 | yes | |
| passive-attack-protection-only-key | yes | PKCS#7 | yes | |

2. Click **Create**; the **Create Keyring** dialog appears.

Section B: Using Keyrings and SSL Certificates



3. Fill in the pane:

- **Keyring Name:** Give the keyring a meaningful name.

Note: Spaces in keyring names are not supported. Including a space can cause unexpected errors while using such keyrings.

- Select the show option you need:

- **Show keypair** allows the keys to be viewed and exported.
- **Do not show keypair** prevents the keypair from being viewed or exported.
- **Show keypair to director** is a keyring viewable only if Director is issuing the command using a SSH-RSA connection.

Note: The choice among **show**, **do not show keypair**, and **show keypair to director** has implications for whether keyrings are included in profiles and backups created by Director. For more information, refer to the *Blue Coat Director User Guide*.

- Select the key length in the **Create a new _____ -bit keyring** field. A length of 1024 bits is the maximum (and default). For deployments reaching outside the U.S., determine the maximum key length allowed for export.

Click **OK**. The keyring is created with the name you chose. It does not have a certificate associated with it yet. To associate a certificate, see “[Importing a Server Certificate](#)” on page 62.

-or-

- Select the **Import keyring** radio button.

Section B: Using Keyrings and SSL Certificates

The grayed-out **Keyring** field becomes enabled, allowing you to paste in an already existing private key. Any certificate or certificate request associated with this private key must be imported separately. For information on importing a certificate, see “[Importing a Server Certificate](#)” on page 62.

If the private key that is being imported has been encrypted with a password, select **Keyring Password** and enter the password into the field.

Note: The only way to retrieve a keyring's private key from the SG appliance is by using Director or the command line—it cannot be exported through the Management Console.

4. Click **OK**.

To view or edit a keyring:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > Keyrings > SSL Keyrings**.
2. Click **View/Edit**.

Related CLI Syntax to Create an SSL Keyring

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) create keyring {show | show-director | no-show}
keyring_id [key_length]
```

Notes

- To view the keypair in an encrypted format, you can optionally specify `des` or `des3` before the `keyring_id`, along with an optional password. If the optional password is provided on the command line, the CLI does not prompt for a password.
- If the optional password is not provided on the command line, the CLI asks for the password (interactive). If you specify either `des` or `des3`, you are prompted.
- To view the keypair in unencrypted format, select either the optional `keyring_id` or use the unencrypted command option.
- You cannot view a keypair over a Telnet connection because of the risk that it could be intercepted.

Deleting an Existing Keyring and Certificate

To delete a keyring and the associated certificate:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > Keyrings > SSL Keyrings**.
 2. Highlight the name of the keyring to delete.
 3. Click **Delete**.
- The Confirm delete dialog appears.
4. Click **OK** in the Confirm delete dialog.

Related CLI Syntax to Delete a Keyring and the Associated Certificate

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) delete keyring keyring_id
```

Section C: Managing Certificates

Section C: Managing Certificates

This section discusses how to manage certificates, from obtaining certificate signing requests to using certificate revocation lists.

In this section are:

- [□ “Managing Certificate Signing Requests”](#)
- [□ “Managing SSL Certificates” on page 60](#)
- [□ “Using Certificate Revocation Lists” on page 62](#)
- [□ “Troubleshooting Certificate Problems” on page 64](#)

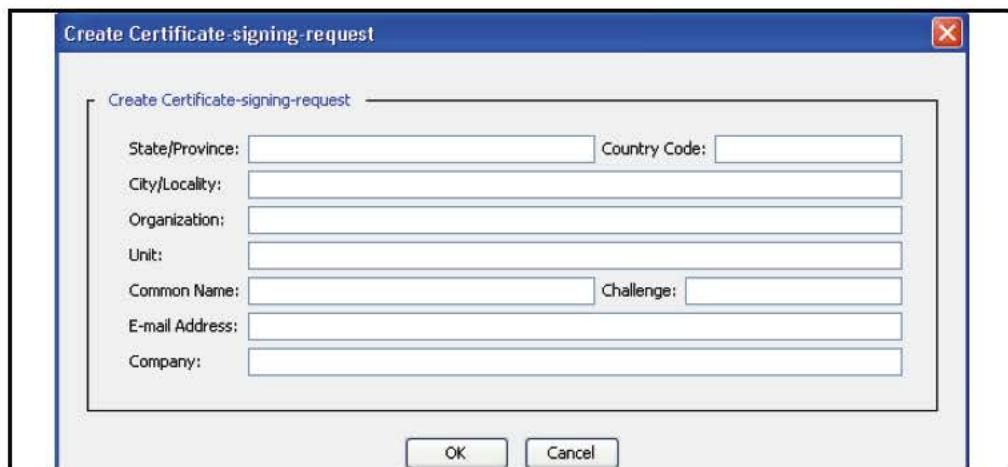
Managing Certificate Signing Requests

Certificate signing requests (CSRs) are used to obtain a certificate signed by a Certificate Authority. You can also create CSRs off box.

Creating a CSR

To create a CSR:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > SSL Keyrings**; click **Edit/View**.
2. From the drop-down list, select the keyring for which you need a signed certificate.
3. From the **Certificate Signing Request** tab, click the **Create** button.



4. Fill in the fields:
 - **State/Province**—Enter the state or province where the machine is located.
 - **Country Code**—Enter the two-character ISO code of the country.
 - **City/Locality**—Enter the city.
 - **Organization**—Enter the name of the company.
 - **Unit**—Enter the name of the group that is managing the machine.
 - **Common Name**—Enter the URL of the company.
 - **Challenge**—Enter a 4-16 character alphanumeric challenge.

Section C: Managing Certificates

- **E-mail Address**—The e-mail address you enter must be 40 characters or less. A longer e-mail address generates an error.
 - **Company**—Enter the name of the company.
5. The **Create** tab displays the message: **Creating....**
 6. Click **OK**.

Related CLI Syntax to Create a CSR

```
SGOS#(config) ssl  
SGOS#(config ssl) create signing-request keyring_id  
SGOS#(config ssl) create signing-request keyring_id [attribute_value]  
[attribute_value]
```

Viewing a Certificate Signing Request

Once a CSR is created, you must submit it to a CA in the format the CA requires. You can view the output of a certificate signing request either through the Management Console or the CLI.

To view the output of a certificate signing request:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > SSL Keyrings**.
2. Click **Edit/View**.
3. From the drop-down list, select the keyring for which you have created a certificate signing request.

The certificate signing request displays in the Certificate Signing Request window and can be copied for submission to a CA.

Managing SSL Certificates

SSL certificates can be obtained two ways:

- Created on the SG appliance as a self-signed certificate

To create a SSL self-signed certificate on the SG appliance using a Certificate Signing Request, continue with the next section.

- Imported after receiving the certificate from the signing authority

If you plan to use SSL certificates issued by Certificate Authorities, the procedure is:

- Obtain the keypair and Certificate Signing Requests (CSRs), either off box or on box, and send them to the Certificate Authority for signing.
- After the signed request is returned to you from the CA, you can import the certificate into the SG appliance. To import a certificate, see “[Importing a Server Certificate](#)” on page 62.

Section C: Managing Certificates

Note: If a Website presents a certificate that is signed by a CA not on Blue Coat default CA list, you might see the following message:

Network Error (ssl_failed)

A secure SSL session could not be established with the Web Site:

You must import the CA Certificate onto the SG appliance before the device can trust the site.

To import an SSL Certificate, skip to “[Importing a Server Certificate](#)” on page 62.

Creating Self-Signed SSL Certificates

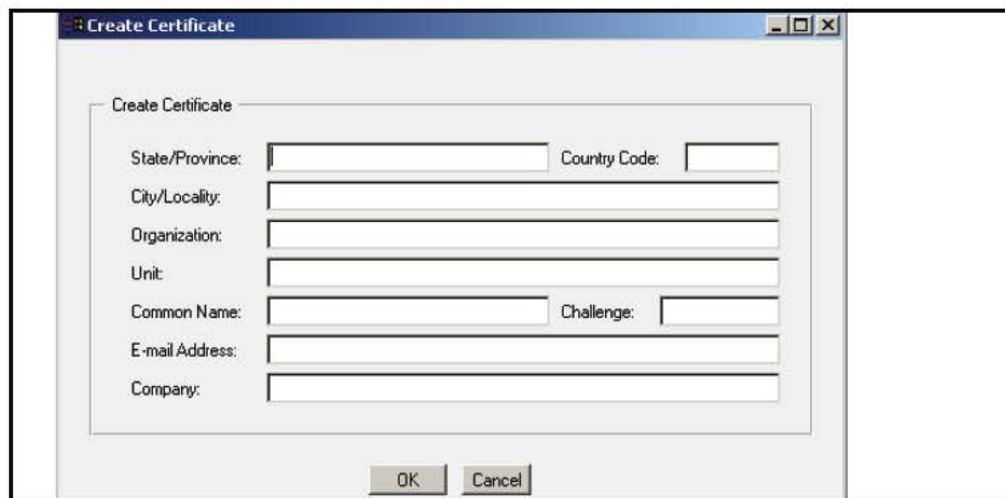
The SG appliance ships with a self-signed certificate, associated with the default keyring. Only one certificate can be associated with a keyring. If you have multiple uses, use a different keyring and associated certificate for each one.

Adding a Self-Signed SSL Certificate

Self-signed certificates are generally meant for intranet use, not Internet.

To create a self-signed certificate:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > Keyrings > SSL Keyrings**.
2. Highlight the keyring for which you want to add a certificate.
3. Click **Edit/View** in the **Keyring** tab.
4. Click **Create**.



5. Fill in the fields:

- **State/Province**—Enter the state or province where the machine is located.
- **Country Code**—Enter the two-character ISO code of the country.
- **City/Locality**—Enter the city.
- **Organization**—Enter the name of the company.

Section C: Managing Certificates

- **Unit**—Enter the name of the group that is managing the machine.
- **Common Name**—A common name should be the one that contains the URL with client access to that particular origin server.
- **Challenge**—Enter a 4-16 character alphanumeric challenge.
- **E-mail Address**—The e-mail address you enter must be 40 characters or less. A longer e-mail address generates an error.
- **Company**—Enter the name of the company.

6. The **Create** tab displays the message: **Creating.....**

Related CLI Syntax to Create a Self-Signed SSL Certificate

```
SGOS#(config ssl) create certificate keyring_id  
SGOS#(config ssl) create certificate keyring-id [attribute_value]  
[attribute_value]
```

Example:

```
SGOS#(config ssl) create certificate keyring-id cn bluecoat challenge  
test c US state CA company bluecoat
```

Importing a Server Certificate

After the CA signs the server certificate and returns it to you, you can import the certificate onto the SG appliance.

To import a server certificate:

1. Copy the certificate to your clipboard. Be sure to include the “Begin Certificate” and “End Certificate” statements.
2. Select **Configuration > SSL > Keyrings**.
3. Highlight the keyring for which you want to import a certificate.
4. Click **Edit/View** in the **Keyrings** tab.
5. In the **Certificate** panel, click **Import**.
6. Paste the certificate you copied into the dialog box. Click **OK**.

The certificate should display in the SSL Certificates Pane, associated with the keyring you selected earlier.

Using Certificate Revocation Lists

Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) enable checking server and client certificates against lists provided and maintained by CAs that show certificates that are no longer valid. Only CRLs that are issued by a trusted issuer can be successfully verified by the SG appliance. The CRL can be imported only when the CRL issuer certificate exists as a CA certificate on the SG appliance.

You can determine if the SG appliance SSL certificates are still valid by checking *Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs)* that are created and issued by trusted Certificate Signing Authorities. A certificate on the list is no longer valid.

Section C: Managing Certificates

Only CRLs that are issued by a trusted issuer can be verified by the SG appliance successfully. The CRL can be imported only when the CRL issuer certificate exists as a CA certificate on the SG appliance.

SGOS allows:

- One local CRL list per certificate issuing authority.
- An import of a CRL that is expired; a warning is displayed in the log.
- An import of a CRL that is effective in the future; a warning is displayed in the log.

CRLs can be used for the following purposes:

- Checking revocation status of client or server certificates with HTTPS Reverse Proxy.
- Checking revocation status of client or server certificates with SSL proxy. (For more information on using CRLs with the SSL proxy, refer to *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*.)
- SG appliance-originated HTTPS downloads (secure image download, content filter database download, and the like).
- PEM-encoded CRLs, if cut and pasted through the inline command.
- DER-format (binary) CRLs, if downloaded from a URL.

To import a CRL:

You can choose from among four methods to install a CRL on the SG appliance:

- Use the Text Editor, which allows you to enter the installable list (or copy and paste the contents of an already-created file) directly onto the SG appliance.
- Create a local file on your local system.
- Enter a remote URL, where you placed an already-created file on an FTP or HTTP server to be downloaded to the SG appliance.
- Use the CLI **inline** command.

To update a CRL:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > CRLs**.
2. Click **New** or highlight an existing CRL and click **Edit**.
3. Give the CRL a name.
4. From the drop-down list, select the method to use to install the CRL; click **Install**.
 - **Remote URL:**
Enter the fully-qualified URL, including the filename, where the CRL is located. To view the file before installing it, click **View**. Click **Install**.
The **Install CRL** dialog displays. Examine the installation status that displays; click **OK**.
 - **Local File:**
Click **Browse** to display the Local File Browse window. Browse for the CRL file on the local system. Open it and click **Install**. When the installation is complete, a results window opens. View the results, close the window, click **Close**.

Section C: Managing Certificates

- **Text Editor:**

Copy a new CRL file into the window, and click Install.

When the installation is complete, a results window opens. View the results, close the window, click Close.

Note: The Management Console text editor can be used to enter a CRL file. You cannot use it to enter CLI commands.

5. Click OK; click **Apply**

Related CLI Syntax to Create a CRL

At the (config) command prompt, enter the following commands:

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) create crt list_name
or
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) inline crt CRL_list_name eof
Paste CRL here
eof
```

Troubleshooting Certificate Problems

Two common certificate problems are discussed below.

- If the client does not trust the Certificate Signing Authority that has signed the appliance's certificate, an error message similar to the following appears in the event log:

```
2004-02-13 07:29:28-05:00EST "CFSSL:SSL_accept error:14094416:SSL
routines:SSL3_READ_BYTES:sslv3 alert certificate unknown" 0
310000:1
../cf_ssl.cpp:1398
```

This commonly occurs when you use the HTTPS-Console service on port 8082, which uses a self-signed certificate by default. When you access the Management Console over HTTPS, the browser displays a pop-up that says that the security certificate is not trusted and asks if you want to proceed. If you select **No** instead of proceeding, the browser sends an *unknown CA alert* to the SG appliance.

You can eliminate the error message one of two ways:

- If this was caused by the Blue Coat self-signed certificate (the certificate associated with the default keyring), import the certificate as a trusted Certificate Signing Authority certificate . See "[Importing a Server Certificate](#)" on page 62 for more information.
- Import a certificate on the SG appliance for use with HTTPS-Console that is signed by a CA that a browser already trusts.

- If the SG appliance's certificate is not accepted because of a *host name mismatch* or it is an *invalid certificate*, you can correct the problem by creating a new certificate and editing the HTTPS-Console service to use it. For information on editing the HTTPS-Console service, refer to *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*.

Section D: Using External Certificates

Section D: Using External Certificates

External certificates are certificates for which Blue Coat does not have the private key. The first step in using external certificates is to import the certificates onto the SG appliance.

Importing and Deleting External Certificates

To Import an external certificate:

1. Copy the certificate onto the clipboard.
2. Select **Configuration > SSL > External Certificates**.
3. Click **Import**.



4. Enter the name of the external certificate into the **External Cert Name** field and paste the certificate into the **External Certificate** field. Be sure to include the **-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----** and **-----END CERTIFICATE-----** statements.
5. Click **OK**.

Deleting an External Certificate

To delete an external certificate:

1. Select **Configuration>SSL>External Certificates**.
2. Highlight the name of the external certificate to be deleted.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **OK** in the Confirm delete dialog that appears;
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Section D: Using External Certificates

Digitally Signing Access Logs

You can digitally sign access logs to certify that a particular SG appliance wrote and uploaded a specific log file. Signing is supported for both content types—text and gzip—and for both upload types—continuous and periodic. Each log file has a signature file associated with it that contains the certificate and the digital signature used for verifying the log file. When you create a signing keyring (which must be done before you enable digital signing), keep in mind the following:

- The keyring must include a certificate. .
- The certificate purpose must be set for **smime** signing. If the certificate purpose is set to anything else, you cannot use the certificate for signing.
- Add the %c parameter in the filenames format string to identify the keyring used for signing. If encryption is enabled along with signing, the %c parameter expands to *keyringName_Certname*.

For more information about digitally signing access logs, refer to *Volume 8: Access Logging*.

Section E: Advanced Configuration

Section E: Advanced Configuration

This section includes the following topics:

- “Importing an Existing Keypair and Certificate”
- “About Certificate Chains” on page 69
- “Importing a CA Certificate” on page 69
- “Creating CA Certificate Lists” on page 70

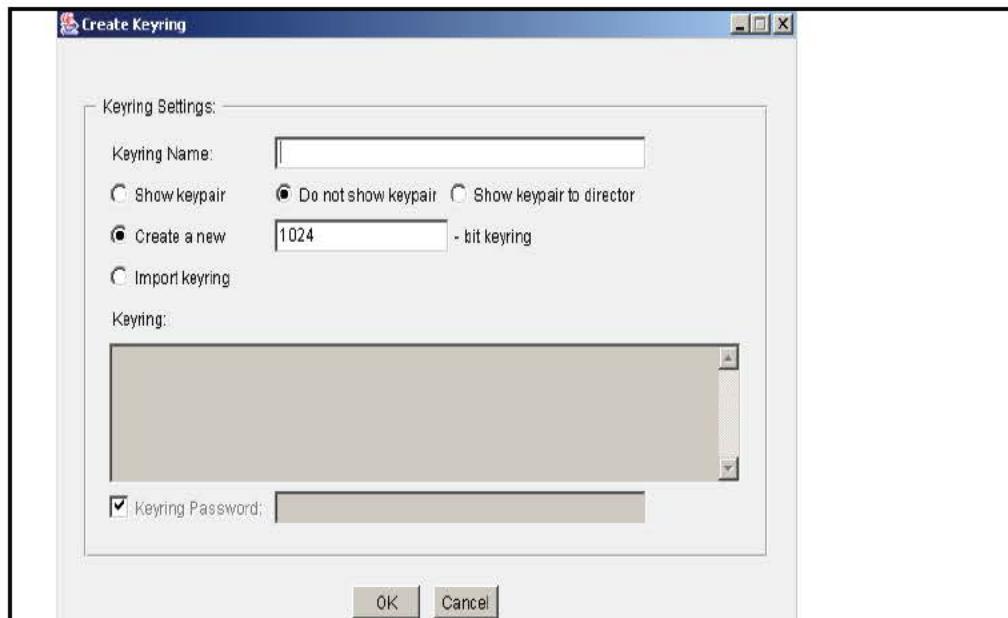
Importing an Existing Keypair and Certificate

If you have a keypair and certificate used on one system, you can import the keypair and certificate for use on a different system. You can also import a certificate chain containing multiple certificates. Use the `inline certificate` command to import multiple certificates through the CLI.

If you are importing a keyring and one or more certificates onto an SG appliance, first import the keyring, followed by the related certificates. The certificates contain the public key from the keyring, and the keyring and certificates are related.

To Import a keyring:

1. Copy the already-created keypair onto the clipboard.
2. Select **Configuration > SSL > Keyrings > SSL Keyrings**.
3. Click **Create**.



Section E: Advanced Configuration

4. Fill in the dialog window as follows:
 - a. **Show keypair** allows the keys to be exported.
 - b. **Do not show keypair** prevents the keypair from being exported.
 - c. **Show keypair to director** is a keyring viewable only if Director is issuing the command using a SSH-RSA connection.

Note: The choice among **show**, **do not show** and **show keypair to director** has implications for whether keyrings are included in profiles and backups created by Director. For more information, refer to the *Blue Coat Director Configuration and Management Guide*.

- d. Select the **Import keyring** radio button.

The grayed-out **Keyring** field becomes enabled, allowing you to paste in the already existing keypair. The certificate associated with this keypair must be imported separately.

If the keypair that is being imported has been encrypted with a password, select **Keyring Password** and enter the password into the field.

5. Click **OK**.

To import a certificate and associate it with a keyring:

1. Copy the certificate onto the clipboard.
2. Select **Configuration > SSL > Keyrings** and click **Edit/View**.
3. From the drop-down list, select the keyring that you just imported.
4. Click **Import** in the **Certificate** field.
5. Paste the certificate into the Import Certificate dialog that appears. Be sure to include the **-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----** and **-----END CERTIFICATE-----** statements.
6. Click **OK**.

Related CLI Syntax to Import a Keyring

```
SGOS#(config ssl) inline {keyring show | show-director | no-show}
keyring_id eof
Paste keypair here
eof
```

Related CLI Syntax to Import a Certificate and Associate it with a Keyring

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) inline certificate keyring_id eof
Paste certificate here
eof
```

Section E: Advanced Configuration

About Certificate Chains

A certificate chain is one that requires that the certificates form a chain where the next certificate in the chain validates the previous certificate, going up the chain to the root, which is signed by a trusted CA. Expiration is done at the single certificate level and is checked independently of the chain verification. Each certificate in the chain must be valid for the entire chain to be valid. You can import a certificate chain containing multiple certificates.

The valid certificate chain can be presented to a browser. To get the SG appliance to present a valid certificate chain, the keyring for the HTTPS service must be updated.

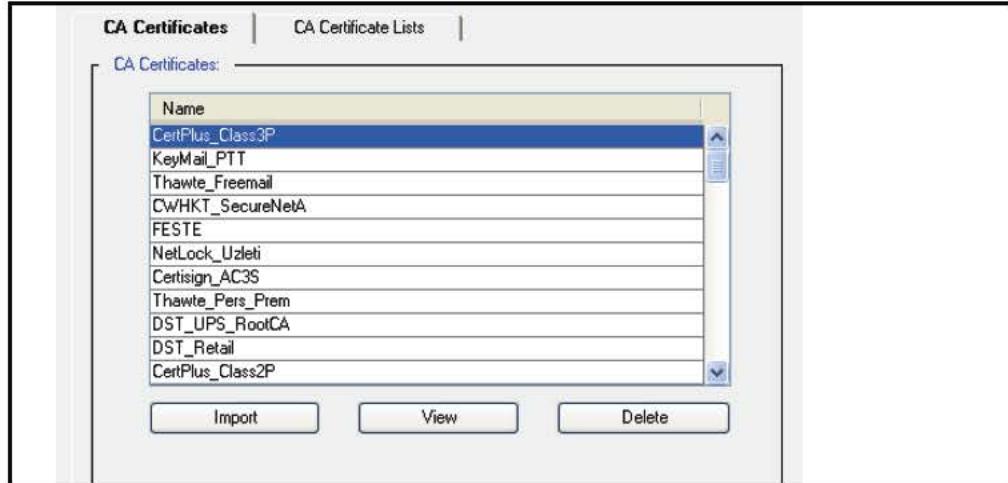
The appliance's CA-certificate list must also be updated if the SG appliance uses HTTPS to communicate with the origin server *and* if the SG appliance is configured, through the `ssl-verify-server` option, to verify the certificate (chain) presented by HTTPS server. If the SG appliance uses HTTP to communicate with the origin server, updating the CA-certificate list has no effect.

Importing a CA Certificate

A CA Certificate is a certificate that verifies the identity of a Certificate Authority. The certificate is used by the SG appliance to verify server and client certificates.

To import an approved CA certificate:

1. Copy the certificate to the clipboard.
2. Select **Configuration > SSL > CA Certificates > CA Certificates**.



3. Click **Import**.
4. Give the certificate a name.

Note: Spaces in CA Certificate names are not supported. Including a space can cause unexpected errors while using such certificates.

5. Paste the signed CA Certificate into the **Import CA Certificate** field.
6. Click **OK**.

Section E: Advanced Configuration

To view a CA certificate:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > CA Certificates > CA Certificates**.
2. Select the certificate you want to view.
3. Click **View**. Examine the contents and click **Close**.

To delete a CA certificate:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > CA Certificates > CA Certificates**.
2. Select the certificate to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **OK**.

Related CLI Syntax to Import a CA Certificate

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) inline ca-certificate ca_certificate_name eof
Paste certificate here
eof
```

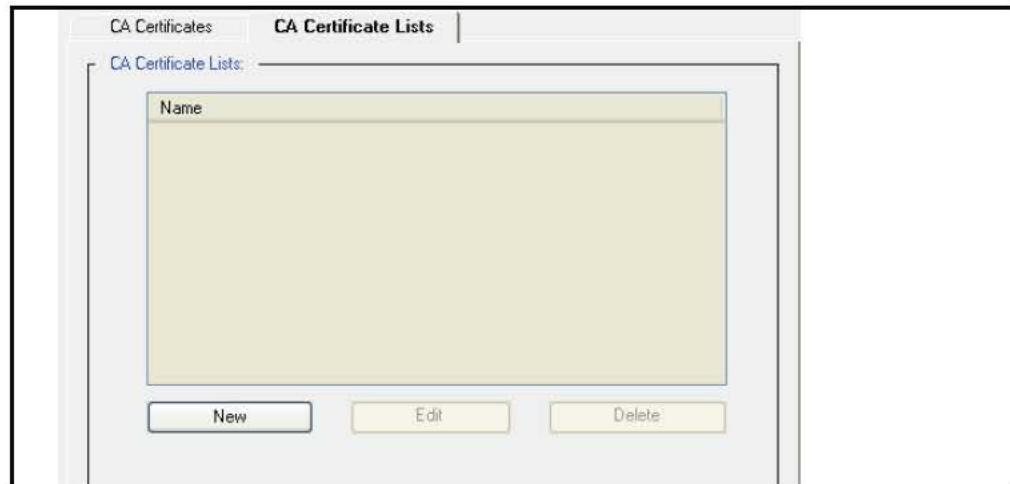
Creating CA Certificate Lists

A CA certificate list can refer to any subset of the available CA Certificates on the SG appliance. When configuring an HTTPS service to do HTTPS Reverse Proxy, this list can be specified to restrict the set of certificate authorities that are trusted to validate client certificates presented to that service.

The default is that no list is configured; all certificates are used in authentication.

To create a CA-Certificate list:

1. Select **Configuration > SSL > CA Certificates > CA Certificate Lists**.



2. Click **New** to create a new list.
3. Enter a meaningful name for the list in the **CA-Certificate List Name** field.
4. To add CA Certificates to the list, highlight the certificate and click **Add**. You cannot add a certificate to a certificate list if it is not already present.

Section E: Advanced Configuration

5. To remove CA Certificates from the list, highlight the certificate in the **Add** list and click **Remove**.
6. Click **OK**

Related CLI Syntax to Manage CA-Certificate Lists

- To enter configuration mode:

```
SGOS#(config ssl) create ccl list_name  
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ccl list_name
```

- The following subcommands are available:

```
SGOS#(config ssl ccl list_name) add ca_cert_name  
SGOS#(config ssl) delete ca-certificate ca_certificate_name
```

To import a CA certificate:

1. Copy the certificate to your clipboard. Be sure to include the “Begin Certificate” and “End Certificate” statements.
2. Select **Configuration > SSL > Keyrings**.
3. Highlight the keyring for which you want to import a certificate.
4. Click **Edit/View** in the **Keyrings** tab.
5. In the **Certificate** panel, click **Import**.
6. Paste the certificate you copied into the dialog box. Click **OK**.

The certificate should display in the SSL Certificates Pane, associated with the keyring you selected earlier.

7. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Section E: Advanced Configuration

Chapter 5: Certificate Realm Authentication

Certificate realms are useful for companies that have a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) in place and would like to have the SG appliance authenticate their end-users using the client's X.509 certificates. If the users are members of an LDAP or Local group, the Certificate Realm can also forward the user credentials to the specified authorization realm, which determines the user's authorization (permissions).

This section discusses the following topics:

- [□ “How Certificate Realm Works”](#)
- [□ “Creating a Certificate Realm” on page 74](#)
- [□ “Defining a Certificate Realm” on page 74](#)
- [□ “Defining Certificate Realm General Properties” on page 75](#)
- [□ “Revoking User Certificates” on page 76](#)

How Certificate Realm Works

Once an SSL session has been established, the user is asked to select the certificate to send to the SG appliance. If the certificate was signed by a Certificate Signing Authority that the SG appliance trusts, including itself, then the user is considered authenticated. The username for the user is the one extracted from the certificate during authentication.

At this point the user is authenticated. If an authorization realm has been specified, such as LDAP or Local, the certificate realm then passes the username to the specified authorization realm, which figures out which groups the user belongs to.

Note: If you authenticate with a certificate realm, you cannot also challenge for a password.

Certificate realms do not require an authorization realm. If no authorization realm is configured, the user cannot be a member of any group.

You do not need to specify an authorization realm if:

- [□ The policy does not make any decisions based on groups](#)
- [□ The policy works as desired when all certificate realm-authenticated users are not in any group](#)

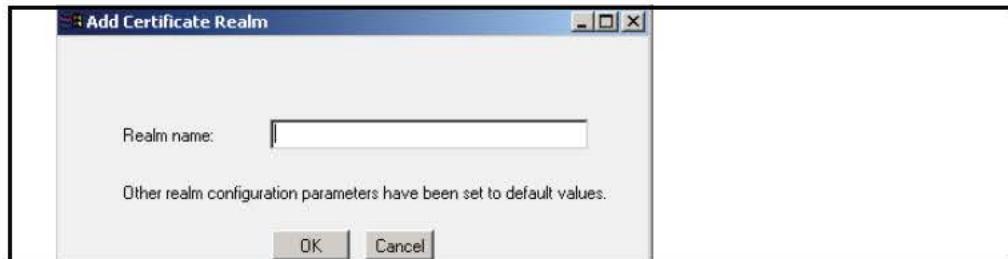
To use a Certificate Realm, you must:

- [□ Configure SSL between the client and SG appliance \(for more information, see “\[Using SSL with Authentication and Authorization Services\]\(#\)” on page 41\).](#)
- [□ Enable **verify-client** on the HTTPS service to be used \(for more information, refer to *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*\).](#)
- [□ Verify that the certificate authority that signed the client's certificates is in the SG *trusted* list.](#)

Creating a Certificate Realm

To create a certificate realm:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Certificate > Certificate Realms.
2. Click New.



3. In the **Realm name** field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Defining a Certificate Realm

To define certificate authentication properties:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Certificate > Certificate Main.



2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the Certificate realm for which you want to change realm properties.
3. (Optional) From the **Authorization Realm Name** drop-down list, select the LDAP or Local realm you want to use to authorize users.
4. From the **username attribute** field, enter the attribute that specifies the common name in the subject of the certificate. **CN** is the default.
5. (Optional, if you are configuring a Certificate realm with LDAP authorization) Enter the list of attributes (the container attribute field) that should be used to construct the user's distinguished name.
For example, **\$(OU) \$(O)** substitutes the OU and O fields from the certificate.
6. (Optional, if you are configuring a Certificate realm with LDAP authorization) Select or deselect **Append Base DN**.

7. (Optional, if you are configuring a Certificate realm with LDAP authorization) Enter the **Base DN** where the search starts. If no BASE DN is specified and Append Base DN is enabled, the first Base DN defined in the LDAP realm used for authorization is appended.

Defining Certificate Realm General Properties

The Certificate General tab allows you to specify the display name, the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL.

To configure certificate realm general settings:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Certificate > Certificate General**.

| Certificate Realms | Certificate Main | Certificate General |
|---|---|---------------------|
| Realm name: | Certificate1 | |
| Display name: | Certificate1 | |
| Refresh Times: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all | |
| Surrogate refresh time: | 900 | seconds |
| Authorization refresh time: | 900 | seconds |
| Inactivity timeout: | 900 | seconds |
| Cookies | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie | | |
| Virtual URL: | | |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the Certificate realm for which to change properties.
3. If needed, change the Certificate realm display name. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be greater than 128 characters and it cannot be null.
4. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
5. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.
Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will verify the user's certificate.
6. Enter the number of seconds in the **Authorization refresh time** field. The Authorization Refresh Time allows you to manage how often the authorization data is verified with the authentication realm. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

7. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
8. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
9. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
10. You can specify a virtual URL. For more information on the virtual URL, see [“Understanding Origin-Style Redirection”](#) on page 34.
11. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Related CLI Syntax to Configure a Certificate Realm

- To enter configuration mode:

```
SGOS#(config) security certificate create-realm realm_name  
SGOS#(config) security certificate edit-realm realm_name
```

- The following commands are available:

```
SGOS#(config certificate realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds  
SGOS#(config certificate realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh  
seconds  
SGOS#(config certificate realm_name) refresh-time authorization-  
refresh seconds  
SGOS#(config certificate realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable |  
disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}}  
SGOS#(config certificate realm_name) virtual-url url
```

Revoking User Certificates

Using policy, you can revoke certain certificates by writing policy that denies access to users who have authenticated with a certificate you want to revoke. You must maintain this list on the SG appliance; it is not updated automatically.

Note: This method of revoking user certificates is meant for those with a small number of certificates to manage.

For information on using automatically updated lists, refer to *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*.

A certificate is identified by its issuer (the Certificate Signing Authority that signed it) and its serial number, which is unique to that CA.

Using that information, you can use the following strings to create a policy to revoke user certificates:

- `user.x509.serialNumber`—This is a string representation of the certificate’s serial number in HEX. The string is always an even number of characters long, so if the number needs an odd number of characters to represent in hex, there is a leading zero. Comparisons are case insensitive.
- `user.x509.issuer`—This is an RFC2253 LDAP DN. Comparisons are case sensitive.
- (optional) `user.x509.subject`: This is an RFC2253 LDAP DN. Comparisons are case sensitive.

Example

If you have only one Certificate Signing Authority signing user certificates, you do not need to test the issuer. In the <Proxy> layer of the Local Policy file:

```
<proxy>
    deny user.x509.serialnumber=11
    deny user.x509.serialNumber=0F
```

If you have multiple Certificate Signing Authorities, test both the issuer and the serial number. In the <Proxy> layer of the Local Policy file:

```
<proxy>
    deny
    user.x509.issuer="Email=name,CN=name,OU=name,O=company,L=city,ST=state
    or province,C=country" user.x509.serialnumber=11 \
    deny user.x509.issuer="CN=name,OU=name,O=company, L=city,ST=state or
    province,C=country" \
    deny user.x509.serialnumber=2CB06E9F00000000000B
```

Creating the Certificate Authorization Policy

When you complete Certificate realm configuration, you can create CPL policies. Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate.

Note: Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file <Proxy> and other layers.

Be aware that the default policy condition for these examples is *allow*. On new SGOS 5.x systems, the default policy condition is *deny*.

- Every Certificate realm authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance.
- A subnet definition determines the members of a group, in this case, members of the Human Resources department. (They are allowed access to the two URLs listed. Everyone else is denied permission.)

```
<Proxy>
    authenticate(CertificateRealm)
<Proxy>
    Define subnet HRSubnet
        192.168.0.0/16
        10.0.0.0/24
    End subnet HRSubnet
    [Rule] client_address=HRSubnet
        url.domain=monster.com
        url.domain=hotjobs.com
        deny
    .
    .
    .
[Rule]
    deny
```

Tips

If you use a certificate realm and see an error message similar to the following

Realm configuration error for realm "cert": connection is not SSL.

This means that certificate authentication was requested for a transaction, but the transaction was not done on an SSL connection, so no certificate was available.

This can happen in three ways:

- The authenticate mode is either `origin-IP-redirect/origin-cookie-redirect` or `origin-IP/origin-cookie`, but the virtual URL does not have an `https:` scheme. This is likely if authentication through a certificate realm is selected with no other configuration, because the default configuration does not use SSL for the virtual URL.
- In a server accelerator deployment, the authenticate mode is `origin` and the transaction is on a non-SSL port.
- The authenticate mode is `origin-IP-redirect/origin-cookie-redirect`, the user has authenticated, the credential cache entry has expired, and the next operation is a POST or PUT from a browser that does not handle 307 redirects (that is, from a browser other than Internet Explorer). The workaround is to visit another URL to refresh the credential cache entry and then try the POST again.
- Forms authentication modes cannot be used with a Certificate realm. If a form mode is in use and the authentication realm is a Certificate realm, a Policy Substitution realm, or an IWA realm, you receive a configuration error.

Chapter 6: Oracle COREid Authentication

The SG appliance can be configured to consult an Oracle COREid (formerly known as Oracle NetPoint) Access Server for authentication and session management decisions. This requires that a COREid realm be configured on the SG appliance and policy written to use that realm for authentication.

The SG appliance supports authentication with Oracle COREid v6.5 and v7.0.

Access to the COREid Access System is done through the Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA), which must be installed on a Windows 2000 system or higher with access to the COREid Access Servers.

Understanding COREid Interaction with Blue Coat

Within the COREid Access System, BCAA acts as a custom AccessGate. It communicates with the COREid Access Servers to authenticate the user and to obtain a COREid session token, authorization actions, and group membership information.

HTTP header variables and cookies specified as authorization actions are returned to BCAA and forwarded to the SG appliance. They can (as an option) be included in requests forwarded by the appliance.

Within the SG system, BCAA acts as its agent to communicate with the COREid Access Servers. The SG appliance provides the user information to be validated to BCAA, and receives the session token and other information from BCAA.

Each SG COREid realm used causes the creation of a BCAA process on the Windows host computer running BCAA. When a process is created, a temporary working directory containing the Oracle COREid files needed for configuration is created for that process. A single host computer can support multiple SG realms (from the same or different SG appliances); the number depends on the capacity of the BCAA host computer and the amount of activity in the realms.

Configuration of the SG COREid realm must be coordinated with configuration of the Access System. Each must be aware of the AccessGate. In addition, certain authorization actions must be configured in the Access System so that BCAA gets the information the SG appliance needs.

Configuring the COREid Access System

Note: Blue Coat assumes you are familiar with the configuration of the COREid Access System and WebGates.

Since BCAA is an AccessGate in the COREid Access System, it must be configured in the Access System just like any other AccessGate. BCAA obtains its configuration from the SG appliance so configuration of BCAA on the host computer is not required. If the Cert Transport Security Mode is used by the Access System, then the certificate files for the BCAA AccessGate must reside on BCAA's host computer.

COREid protects resources identified by URLs in policy domains. A SG COREid realm is associated with a single protected resource. This could be an already existing resource in the Access System, (typical for a reverse proxy arrangement) or it could be a resource created specifically to protect access to SG services (typical for a forward proxy).

Important: The request URL is not sent to the Access System as the requested resource; the requested resource is the entire SG realm. Access control of individual URLs is done on the SG appliance using policy.

The COREid policy domain that controls the protected resource must use one of the challenge methods supported by the SG appliance.

Supported challenge methods are Basic, X.509 Certificates and Forms. Acquiring the credentials over SSL is supported as well as challenge redirects to another server.

The SG appliance requires information about the authenticated user to be returned as COREid authorization actions for the associated protected resource. Since authentication actions are not returned when a session token is simply validated, the actions must be authorization and not authentication actions.

The following authorization actions should be set for all three authorization types (Success, Failure, and Inconclusive):

- A HeaderVar action with the name `BCSI_USERNAME` and with the value corresponding to the simple username of the authenticated user. For example, with an LDAP directory this might be the value of the `cn` attribute or the `uid` attribute.
- A HeaderVar action with the name `BCSI_GROUPS` and the value corresponding to the list of groups to which the authenticated user belongs. For example, with an LDAP directory this might be the value of the `memberOf` attribute.

Once the COREid AccessGate, authentication scheme, policy domain, rules, and actions have been defined, the SG appliance can be configured.

Additional COREid Configuration Notes

The SG appliance's credential cache only caches the user's authentication information for the lesser of the two values of the time-to-live (TTL) configured on the SG appliance and the session TTL configured in the Access System for the AccessGate.

Configuring the SG Realm

The SG realm must be configured so that it can:

- Communicate with the Blue Coat agent(s) that act on its behalf (hostname or IP address, port, SSL options, and the like).
- Provide BCAAA with the information necessary to allow it to identify itself as an AccessGate (AccessGate id, shared secret).
- Provide BCAAA with the information that allows it to contact the primary COREid Access Server (IP address, port, connection information).
- Provide BCAAA with the information that it needs to do authentication and collect authorization information (protected resource name), and general options (off-box redirection).

For more information on configuring the SG COREid realm, see “[Creating a COREid Realm](#)” on page 82.

Note: All SG appliance and agent configuration is done on the appliance. The appliance sends the necessary information to BCAA when it establishes communication.

Participating in a Single Sign-On (SSO) Scheme

The SG appliance can participate in SSO using the encrypted `ObSSOCookie` cookie. This cookie is set in the browser by the first system in the domain that authenticates the user; other systems in the domain obtain authentication information from the cookie and so do not have to challenge the user for credentials. The SG appliance sets the `ObSSOCookie` cookie if it is the first system to authenticate a user, and authenticates the user based on the cookie if the cookie is present.

Since the SSO information is carried in a cookie, the SG appliance must be in the same cookie domain as the servers participating in SSO. This imposes restrictions on the `authenticate.mode()` used on the SG appliance.

- A reverse proxy can use any `origin` mode.
- A forward proxy must use one of the `origin-redirect` modes (such as `origin-cookie-redirect`). When using `origin-*-redirect` modes, the virtual URL's hostname must be in the same cookie domain as the other systems. It cannot be an IP address; the default `www.cfauth.com` does not work either.

When using `origin-*-redirect`, the `sso` cookie is automatically set in an appropriate response after the SG appliance authenticates the user. When using `origin` mode (in a reverse proxy), setting this cookie must be explicitly specified by the administrator using the policy substitution variable `$(x-agent-sso-cookie)`. The variable `$(x-agent-sso-cookie)` expands to the appropriate value of the `set-cookie`: header.

Avoiding SG Appliance Challenges

In some COREid deployments all credential challenges are issued by a central authentication service. Protected services do not challenge and process request credentials; instead, they work entirely with the `sso` token. If the request does not include an `sso` token, or if the `sso` token is not acceptable, the request is redirected to the central service, where authentication occurs. Once authentication is complete, the request is redirected to the original resource with a response that sets the `sso` token.

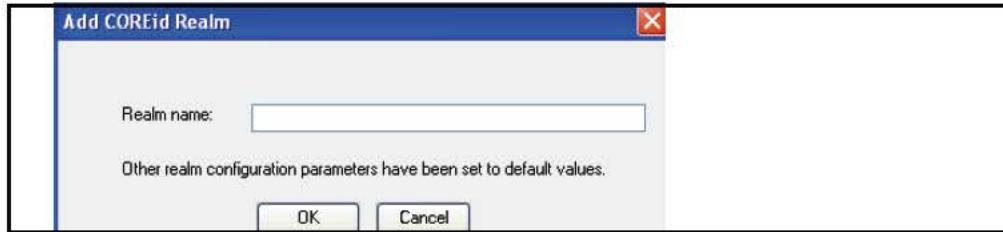
If the COREid authentication scheme is configured to use a forms-based authentication, the SG appliance redirects authentication requests to the form URL automatically. If the authentication scheme is not using forms authentication but has specified a challenge redirect URL, the SG appliance only redirects the request to the central service if `always-redirect-offbox` is enabled for the realm on the SG. If the `always-redirect-offbox` option is enabled, the authentication scheme must use forms authentication or have a challenge redirect URL specified.

Note: The SG appliance must not attempt to authenticate a request for the off-box authentication URL. If necessary, `authenticate (no)` can be used in policy to prevent this.

Creating a COREid Realm

To create a COREid realm:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Oracle COREid > COREid Realms.
2. Click New.



3. In the Realm name field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter. The name should be meaningful to you, but it does not have to be the name of the COREid AccessGate.
4. Click OK.
5. Click Apply to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Configuring Agents

You must configure the COREid realm so that it can find the Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA).

To configure the BCAAAs agent:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Oracle COREid > Agents.



2. Select the realm name to edit from the drop-down list.
3. In the Primary agent section, enter the hostname or IP address where the agent resides.
4. Change the port from the default of 16101 if necessary.

5. Enter the AccessGate ID in the AccessGate id field. The AccessGate ID is the ID of the AccessGate as configured in the Access System.
6. If an AccessGate password has been configured in the Access System, you must specify the password on the SG appliance. Click Change Secret and enter the password. The passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.
7. (Optional) Enter an alternate agent host and AccessGate ID in the **Alternate agent** section.
8. (Optional) Select Enable SSL to enable SSL between the SG appliance and the BCAA Agent.
9. (Optional) By default, if SSL is enabled, the COREid BCAA certificate is verified. If you do not want to verify the agent certificate, disable this setting.
10. Specify the length of time in the **Timeout Request** field, in seconds, to elapse before timeout if a response from BCAA is not received. (The default request timeout is 60 seconds.)
11. If you want username and group comparisons on the SG appliance to be case sensitive, select **Case sensitive**.

Configuring the COREid Access Server

Once you create a COREid realm, use the COREid Access Server page to specify the primary Access Server information.

To configure the COREid Access Server:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Oracle COREid > COREid Access Server.

| COREid Realms | Agents | COREid Access Server | COREid Ge |
|---|--|---|-----------|
| Realm name: | COREid1 | | |
| Protected resource name: | | | |
| Security mode: | Open | <input type="button" value="Change Transport Pass Phrase"/> | |
| Transport certificates path: | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Always redirect off-box | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Validate client IP address | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Add header responses from server | | | |
| Access Server ID: | | | |
| Access Server hostname: | | Port: | 6021 |

2. Select the realm name to edit from the drop-down list.
3. Enter the protected resource name. The protected resource name is the same as the resource name defined in the Access System policy domain.
4. Select the Security Transport Mode for the AccessGate to use when communicating with the Access System.
5. If Simple or Cert mode is used, specify the Transport Pass Phrase configured in the Access System. Click **Change Transport Pass Phrase** to set the pass phrase.
6. If Cert mode is used, specify the location on the BCAA host machine where the key, server and CA chain certificates reside. The certificate files must be named `aaa_key.pem`, `aaa_cert.pem`, and `aaa_chain.pem`, respectively.

7. To force authentication challenges to always be redirected to an off-box URL, select **Always redirect off-box**.
8. To enable validation of the client IP address in SSO cookies, select **Validate client IP address**. If the client IP address in the SSO cookie can be valid yet different from the current request client IP address because of downstream proxies or other devices, then deselect the **Validate client IP address** in the realm. Also modify the WebGates participating in SSO with the SG appliance. Modify the `WebGateStatic.1st` file to either set the `ipvalidation` parameter to false or to add the downstream proxy/device to the `IPValidationExceptions` lists.
9. If your Web applications need information from the Authorization Actions, select **Add Header Responses**. Authorization actions from the policy domain obtained during authentication are added to each request forwarded by the SG appliance. Header responses replace any existing header of the same name; if no such header exists, the header is added. Cookie responses replace a cookie header with the same cookie name, if no such cookie header exists, one is added.
10. Specify the ID of the AccessGate's primary Access Server.
11. Specify the hostname of the AccessGate's primary Access Server.
12. Specify the port of the AccessGate's primary Access Server.
13. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Configuring the General COREid Settings

The COREid General tab allows you to specify a display name, the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL.

To configure the general COREid settings:

1. Select **Authentication > Oracle COREid > COREid General**.

| COREid Realms | Agents | COREid Access Server | COREid General |
|----------------|---|----------------------|----------------|
| Realm name: | <input type="text" value="COREid1"/> | | |
| Display name: | <input type="text" value="COREid1"/> | | |
| Refresh Times: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all Credential refresh time: <input type="text" value="900"/> seconds Surrogate refresh time: <input type="text" value="900"/> seconds Inactivity timeout: <input type="text" value="900"/> seconds Rejected credentials time: <input type="text" value="1"/> seconds | | |
| Cookies | <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie | | |
| Virtual URL: | <input type="text" value="www.cfauth.com/"/> | | |
| | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Challenge user after logout | | |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the COREid realm for which you want to change properties.
3. If needed, change the COREid realm display name. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be greater than 128 characters and it cannot be null.
4. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
5. Enter the number of seconds in the **Credential refresh time** field. The Credential Refresh Time is the amount of time basic credentials (username and password) are kept on the SG appliance. This feature allows the SG appliance to reduce the load on the authentication server and enables credential spoofing. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will authenticate the user supplied credentials against the cached credentials. If the credentials received do not match the cached credentials, they are forwarded to the authentication server in case the user password changed. After the refresh time expires, the credentials are forwarded to the authentication server for verification.

6. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will verify the user's credentials.

Depending upon the authentication mode and the user-agent, this may result in challenging the end user for credentials.

The main goal of this feature is to verify that the user-agent still has the appropriate credentials.

7. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
8. If you use Basic credentials and want to cache failed authentication attempts (to reduce the load on the authentication service), enter the number of seconds in the **Rejected Credentials time** field. This setting, enabled by default and set to one second, allows failed authentication attempts to be automatically rejected for up to 10 seconds. Any Basic credentials that match a failed result before its cache time expires are rejected without consulting the back-end authentication service. The original failed authentication result is returned for the new request.

All failed authentication attempts can be cached: Bad password, expired account, disabled account, old password, server down.

To disable caching for failed authentication attempts, set the **Rejected Credentials time** field to 0.

9. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.

10. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
11. Specify the virtual URL to redirect the user to when they need to be challenged by the SG appliance. If the appliance is participating in SSO, the virtual hostname must be in the same cookie domain as the other servers participating in the SSO. It cannot be an IP address or the default, www.cfauth.com.
12. Select the **Challenge user after logout** check box if the realm requires the users to enter their credentials after they have logged out.
13. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Related CLI Syntax to Configure a COREid Realm

- To enter configuration mode:

```
SGOS#(config) security coreid create-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config) security coreid edit-realm realm_name
```

- The following subcommands are available:

```
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) primary-agent {host hostname / port
port_number}
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) alternate-agent {host hostname / port
port_number}
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) ssl enable
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) ssl-verify-agent enable
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) sso-type {query-client | query-dc |
query-dc-client}
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) refresh-time credential-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) refresh-time rejected-credentials-
refresh seconds
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable}
| verify-ip {enable | disable}}
SGOS#(config coreid realm_name) virtual-url url
```

Creating the CPL

You can create CPL policies now that you have completed COREid realm configuration. Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate for your purposes.

The examples below assume the default policy condition is *allow*. On new SGOS 5.x systems, the default policy condition is *deny*.

Note: Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file <Proxy> and other layers.

- Every COREid-authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance.

```
<Proxy>
  authenticate(COREidRealm)
```

- Group membership is the determining factor in granting access to the SG appliance.

```
<Proxy>
  authenticate(COREidRealm)

<Proxy>
  group="cn=proxyusers, ou=groups, o=mycc"
  deny
```


Chapter 7: Forms-Based Authentication

You can use forms-based authentication exceptions to control what your users see during authentication. You can:

- Specify the realm the user is to authenticate against.
- Specify that the credentials requested are for the SG appliance. This avoids confusion with other authentication challenges.
- Make the form comply with company standards and provide other information, such as a help link.

The authentication form (an HTML document) is served when the user makes a request and requires forms-based authentication. If the user successfully authenticates to the SG appliance, the appliance redirects the user back to the original request.

If the user does not successfully authenticate against the SG appliance and the error is user-correctable, the user is presented with the authentication form again.

Note: You can configure and install an authentication form and several properties through the Management Console and the CLI, but you must use policy to dictate the authentication form's use.

With forms-based authenticating, you can set limits on the maximum request size to store and define the request object expiry time. You can also specify whether to verify the client's IP address against the original request and whether to allow redirects to the original request.

To create and put into use forms-based authentication, you must complete the following steps:

- Create a new form or edit one of the existing authentication form exceptions
- Set storage options
- Set policies

Section A: Understanding Authentication Forms

Section A: Understanding Authentication Forms

Three authentication forms are created initially:

- ❑ **authentication_form**: Enter Proxy Credentials for Realm \$(cs-realm). This is the standard authentication form that is used for authentication with the SG appliance.
- ❑ **new_pin_form**: Create New PIN for Realm \$(cs-realm). This form is used if you created a RADIUS realm using RSA SecurID tokens. This form prompts the user to enter a new PIN. The user must enter the PIN twice in order to verify that it was entered correctly.
- ❑ **query_form**: Query for Realm \$(cs-realm). This form is used if you created a RADIUS realm using RSA SecurID tokens. The form is used to display the series of yes/no questions asked by the SecurID new PIN process.

You can customize any of the three initial authentication form exceptions or you can create other authentication forms. (You can create as many authentication form exceptions as needed. The form must be a valid HTML document that contains valid form syntax.)

Each authentication form can contain the following:

- ❑ **Title** and sentence instructing the user to enter SG credentials for the appropriate realm.
- ❑ **Domain**: Text input with maximum length of 64 characters. The name of the input must be PROXY_SG_DOMAIN, and you can specify a default value of \$(x-cs-auth-domain) so that the user's domain is prepopulated on subsequent attempts (after a failure).

The input field is optional, used only if the authentication realm is an IWA realm. If it is used, the value is prepended to the username value with a backslash.

- ❑ **Username**: Text input with maximum length of 64 characters. The name of the input must be PROXY_SG_USERNAME, and you can specify a default value of \$(x-cs-username) so the username is prepopulated on subsequent attempts (after a failure).
- ❑ **Password**: The password should be of type PASSWORD with a maximum length of 64 characters. The name of the input must be PROXY_SG_PASSWORD.
- ❑ **Request ID**: If the request contains a body, then the request is stored on the SG appliance until the user is successfully authenticated.

The request ID should be of type HIDDEN. The input name must be PROXY_SG_REQUEST_ID, and the value must be \$(x-cs-auth-request-id). The information to identify the stored request is saved in the request id variable.

- ❑ **Challenge State**: The challenge state should be of type HIDDEN. If a RADIUS realm is using a response/challenge, this field is used to cache identification information needed to correctly respond to the challenge.

The input name must be PROXY_SG_PRIVATE_CHALLENGE_STATE, and the value must be \$(x-auth-private-challenge-state).

- ❑ **Submit button**. The submit button is required to submit the form to the SG appliance.
- ❑ **Clear form button**. The clear button is optional and resets all form values to their original values.

Section A: Understanding Authentication Forms

- ❑ **Form action URI:** The value is the authentication virtual URL plus the query string containing the base64 encoded original URL \$(x-cs-auth-form-action-url).
- ❑ Form METHOD of POST. The form method must be POST. The SG appliance does not process forms submitted with GET.

The SG appliance only parses the following input fields during form submission:

- ❑ PROXY_SG_USERNAME (required)
- ❑ PROXY_SG_PASSWORD (required)
- ❑ PROXY_SG_REQUEST_ID (required)
- ❑ PROXY_SG_PRIVATE_CHALLENGE_STATE (required)
- ❑ PROXY_SG_DOMAIN (optional) If specified, its value is prepended to the username and separated with a backslash.

Authentication_form

The initial form, authentication_form, looks similar to the following:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Enter Proxy Credentials for Realm $(cs-realm)</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Enter Proxy Credentials for Realm $(cs-realm)</H1>
<P>Reason for challenge: $(exception.last_error)
<P>$(x-auth-challenge-string)
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION=$(x-cs-auth-form-action-url) >
$(x-cs-auth-form-domain-field)
<P>Username: <INPUT NAME="PROXY_SG_USERNAME" MAXLENGTH="64"
VALUE=$(cs-username)></P>
<P>Password: <INPUT TYPE=PASSWORD NAME="PROXY_SG_PASSWORD"
MAXLENGTH="64"></P>
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_REQUEST_ID" VALUE=$(x-cs-auth-
request-id) >
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_PRIVATE_CHALLENGE_STATE"
VALUE=$(x-auth-private-challenge-state) >
<P><INPUT TYPE=SUBMIT VALUE="Submit"> <INPUT TYPE=RESET></P>
</FORM>
<P>$(exception.contact)
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

If the realm is an IWA realm, the \$(x-cs-auth-form-domain-field) substitution expands to:

```
<P>Domain: <INPUT NAME=PROXY_SG_DOMAIN MAXLENGTH=64 VALUE=$(x-cs-auth-
domain) >
```

If you specify \$(x-cs-auth-form-domain-field), you do not need to explicitly add the domain input field.

For comparison, the new_pin_form and query_form look similar to the following:

Section A: Understanding Authentication Forms

New_pin_form

```

<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Create New PIN for Realm $(cs-realm)</TITLE>
<SCRIPT LANGUAGE="JavaScript"><!--
function validatePin() {
var info;
var pin = document.pin_form.PROXY_SG_PASSWORD;
if (pin.value != document.pin_form.PROXY_SG RETYPE_PIN.value) {
    info = "The PINs did not match. Please enter them again.";
} else {
    // Edit this regular expression to match local PIN
    definition
    var re=/^ [A-Za-z0-9] {4,16} $/
    var match=re.exec(pin.value);
    if (match == null) {
        info = "The PIN must be 4 to 16 alphanumeric
        characters";
    } else {
        return true;
    }
}
alert(info);
pin.select();
pin.focus();
return false;
// -->
</script>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Create New PIN for Realm $(cs-realm)</H1>
<P>$ (x-auth-challenge-string)
<FORM NAME="pin_form" METHOD="POST" ACTION=$ (x-cs-auth-form-action-
url) ONSUBMIT="return validatePin() ">
$(x-cs-auth-form-domain-field)
<P> Enter New Pin: <INPUT TYPE=PASSWORD NAME="PROXY_SG_PASSWORD"
MAXLENGTH="64"></P>
<P>Retype New Pin: <INPUT TYPE=PASSWORD NAME="PROXY_SG RETYPE_PIN"
MAXLENGTH="64"></P>
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_USERNAME" VALUE=$ (cs-username) >
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_REQUEST_ID" VALUE=$ (x-cs-auth-
request-id) >
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_PRIVATE_CHALLENGE_STATE" VALUE=$ (x-
auth-private-challenge-state) >
<P><INPUT TYPE=SUBMIT VALUE="Submit"></P>
</FORM>
<P>$ (exception.contact)
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Section A: Understanding Authentication Forms

Query_form

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Query for Realm ${cs-realm}</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Query for Realm ${cs-realm}</H1>
<P>${x-auth-challenge-string}
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="${x-cs-auth-form-action-url}">
${x-cs-auth-form-domain-field}
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_USERNAME" VALUE="${cs-username}">
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_REQUEST_ID" VALUE="${x-cs-auth-request-id}">
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_PRIVATE_CHALLENGE_STATE" VALUE="${x-auth-private-challenge-state}">
<INPUT TYPE=HIDDEN NAME="PROXY_SG_PASSWORD" ">>
<P><INPUT TYPE=SUBMIT VALUE="Yes"
ONCLICK="PROXY_SG_PASSWORD.value='Y'">
<INPUT TYPE=SUBMIT VALUE="No" ONCLICK="PROXY_SG_PASSWORD.value='N'"></P>
</FORM>
<P>${(exception.contact)}
```

User/Realm CPL Substitutions for Authentication Forms

CPL user/realm substitutions that are common in authentication form exceptions are listed below. The syntax for a CPL substitution is:

`$(CPL_substitution)`

| | | |
|----------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| group | user-name | x-cs-auth-request-id |
| groups | user.x509.issuer | x-cs-auth-domain |
| realm | user.x509.serialNumber | x-cs-auth-form-domain-field |
| user | user.x509.subject | x-cs-auth-form-action-url |
| cs-realm | x-cs-auth-request-id | x-auth-challenge-string |
| | x-auth-private-challenge-state | |

Note: Any substitutions that are valid in CPL and in other exceptions are valid in authentication form exceptions.

For a discussion of CPL and a complete list of CPL substitutions, as well as a description of each substitution, refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

Section A: Understanding Authentication Forms

Tip

There is no realm restriction on the number of authentication form exceptions you can create. You can have an unlimited number of forms, although you might want to make them as generic as possible to cut down on maintenance.

Section B: Creating and Editing a Form

Section B: Creating and Editing a Form

You can create a new form or you can edit one of the existing ones. If you create a new form, you need to define its type (authentication_form, new_pin_form, or query_form). The form is created from the default definition for that type. Editing the initial forms does not affect how future forms are created.

To create or edit an authentication form:

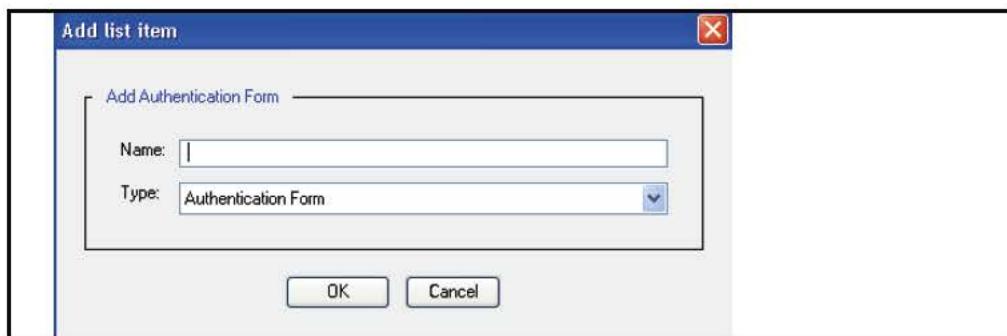
1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Forms**.
2. Select one of the buttons below the authentication forms:
 - Highlight the form you want to edit, delete, or view.

Note: **View** in the Authentication Forms panel and **View** in the Default Definitions panel have different functions. **View** in the Authentication Forms panel allows you to view the form you highlighted; **View** in the Default Definitions panel allows you view the original, default settings for each form. This is important in an upgrade scenario; any forms already installed will not be changed. You can compare existing forms to the default version and decide if your forms need to be modified.

- Click **New** to create a new form.

To create a new form:

The **New** button works independently of the highlighted form. The template used for the new form is chosen from the **Add Authentication Form** dialog.



- Enter the form name and select the authentication type from the dropdown menu.
- Click **OK**.

To edit a form:

Select the form you want to edit and click **Edit**.

Section B: Creating and Editing a Form



- From the drop-down list, select the method to use to install the authentication form; click **Install**.
 - **Remote URL:**
Enter the fully-qualified URL, including the filename, where the authentication form is located. To view the file before installing it, click **View**. Click **Install**. To view the results, click **Results**; to close the dialog when through, click **OK**.
 - **Local File:**
Click **Browse** to bring up the Local File Browse window. Browse for the file on the local system. Open it and click **Install**. When the installation is complete, a results window opens. View the results; to close the window, click **Close**.
 - **Text Editor:**
The current authentication form is displayed in the text editor. You can edit the form in place. Click **Install** to install the form. When the installation is complete, a results window opens. View the results; to close the window, click **Close**.

Related CLI Syntax to Create a Form

```
#(config) security authentication-forms copy [source_form_name  
target_form_name]  
#(config) security authentication-forms create {authentication-form |  
new-pin-form | query-form} form_name  
#(config) security authentication-forms delete form_name  
#(config) security authentication-forms inline form_name eof_marker  
#(config) security authentication-forms load form_name  
#(config) security authentication-forms no path [form_name]  
#(config) security authentication-forms path [form_name] path  
#(config) security authentication-forms view
```

Section C: Setting Storage Options

Section C: Setting Storage Options

When a request requiring the user to be challenged with a form contains a body, the request is stored on the SG appliance while the user is being authenticated. Storage options include:

- the maximum request size.
- the expiration of the request.
- whether to verify the IP address of the client requesting against the original request.
- whether to allow redirects from the origin server

The storage options are global, applying to all form exceptions you use.

The global allow redirects configuration option can be overridden on a finer granularity in policy using the `authenticate.redirect_stored_requests(yes|no)` action.

To set storage options:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Request Storage**.

| Request Storage | |
|-----------------|--|
| Request Storage | Maximum request size to store (Megabytes): <input type="text" value="50"/> Request object expiry time (seconds): <input type="text" value="300"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address against the original request <input type="checkbox"/> Allow redirects |

2. In the **Maximum request size to store (Megabytes)** field, enter the maximum POST request size allowed during authentication. The default is 50 megabytes.
3. In the **Request object expiry time (seconds)** field, enter the amount of time before the stored request expires. The default is 300 seconds (five minutes). The expiry time should be long enough for the user to fill out and submit the authentication form.
4. If you do not want the SG appliance to **Verify the IP address against the original request**, deselect that option. The default is to verify the IP address.
5. To **Allow redirects** from the origin servers, select the checkbox. The default is to not allow redirects from origin servers.

Note: During authentication, the user's POST is redirected to a GET request. The client therefore automatically follows redirects from the origin server. Because the SG appliance is converting the GET to a POST and adding the post data to the request before contacting the origin server, the administrator must explicitly specify that redirects to these POSTs requests can be automatically followed.

6. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Section C: Setting Storage Options

Related CLI Syntax to Set Storage Options

```
SGOS#(config) security request-storage max-size megabytes
SGOS#(config) security request-storage expiry-time seconds
SGOS#(config) security request-storage verify-ip enable | disable
SGOS#(config) security request-storage allow-redirects enable |
disable
```

Section D: Using CPL with Forms-Based Authentication

Section D: Using CPL with Forms-Based Authentication

To use forms-based authentication, you must create policies that enable it and also control which form is used in which situations. A form must exist before it can be referenced in policy.

- ❑ Which form to use during authentication is specified in policy using one of the CPL conditions `authenticate.form(form_name)`, `authenticate.new_pin_form(form_name)`, or `authenticate.query_form(form_name)`.

These conditions override the use of the initial forms for the cases where a new pin form needs to be displayed or a query form needs to be displayed. All three of the conditions verify that the form name has the correct type.

Note: Each of these conditions can be used with the form authentication modes only. If no form is specified, the form defaults to the CPL condition for that form. That is, if no name is specified for `authenticate.form(form_name)`, the default is `authentication_form`; if no name is specified for `authenticate.new_pin_form(form_name)`, the default is `authenticate.new_pin_form`, and if no name is specified for `authenticate.query_form(form_name)`, the default is `authenticate.query_form`.

- ❑ Using the `authentication.mode()` property selects a combination of challenge type and surrogate credentials. The `authentication.mode()` property offers several options specifically for forms-based authentication:
 - **Form-IP**—The user's IP address is used as a surrogate credential. The form is presented whenever the user's credential cache entry expires.
 - **Form-Cookie**—Cookies are used as surrogate credentials. The cookies are set on the OCS domain only, and the user is presented with the form for each new domain. This mode is most useful in reverse proxy scenarios where there are a limited number of domains.
 - **Form-Cookie-Redirect**—The user is redirected to the authentication virtual URL before the form is presented. The authentication cookie is set on both the virtual URL and the OCS domain. The user is only challenged when the credential cache entry expires.
 - **Form-IP-redirect**—This is similar to **Form-IP** except that the user is redirected to the authentication virtual URL before the form is presented.
- ❑ If you authenticate users who have third-party cookies explicitly disabled, you can use the `authenticate.use_url_cookie()` property.
- ❑ Since the `authentication.mode()` property is defined as a form mode (above) in policy, you do not need to adjust the default authenticate mode through the CLI.
- ❑ Using the `authenticate.redirect_stored_requests(yes|no)` action allows granularity in policy over the global allow redirect config option.

For information on using these CPL conditions and properties, refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

Section D: Using CPL with Forms-Based Authentication

Tips

- If the user is supposed to be challenged with a form on a request for an image or video, the SG appliance returns a 403 error page instead of the form. If the reason for the challenge is that the user's credentials have expired and the object is from the same domain as the container page, then reloading the container page results in the user receiving the authentication form and being able to authenticate. However, if the client browser loads the container page using an existing authenticated connection, the user might still not receive the authentication form.

Closing and reopening the browser should fix the issue. Requesting a different site might also cause the browser to open a new connection and the user is returned the authentication form.

If the container page and embedded objects have a different domain though and the authentication mode is **form-cookie**, reloading or closing and reopening the browser might not fix the issue, as the user is never returned a cookie for the domain the object belongs to. In these scenarios, Blue Coat recommends that policy be written to either bypass authentication for that domain or to use a different authentication mode such as **form-cookie-redirect** for that domain.

- Forms-based authentication works with HTTP browsers only.
- Because forms only support Basic authentication, authentication-form exceptions cannot be used with a Certificate realm. If a form is in use and the authentication realm is or a Certificate realm, you receive a configuration error.
- User credentials are sent in plain text. However, they can be sent securely using SSL if the virtual URL is HTTPS.
- Because not all user requests support forms (such as WebDAV and streaming), create policy to bypass authentication or use a different authentication mode with the same realm for those requests.

Chapter 8: IWA Realm Authentication and Authorization

Integrated Windows Authentication (IWA) is an authentication mechanism available on Windows networks. (The name of the realm has been changed from NTLM to IWA.)

IWA is a Microsoft-proprietary authentication suite that allows Windows clients (running on Windows 2000 and higher) to automatically choose between using Kerberos and NTLM authentication challenge/response, as appropriate. When an IWA realm is used and a resource is requested by the client from the SG appliance, the appliance contacts the client's domain account to verify the client's identity and request an access token. The access token is generated by the domain controller (in case of NTLM authentication) or a Kerberos server (in the case of Kerberos authentication) and passed to (and if valid, accepted by) the SG appliance.

Refer to the Microsoft Web site for detailed information about the IWA protocol.

This section discusses the following topics:

- “How Blue Coat Works with IWA”
- “Creating an IWA Realm” on page 101
- “IWA Servers” on page 102
- “Defining IWA Realm General Properties” on page 103
- “Creating the CPL” on page 107

How Blue Coat Works with IWA

The server side of the Kerberos or NTLM authentication exchange is handled by the Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA).

A single BCAA service can support multiple SG appliances; however, the service starts a processor agent for each realm that only handles authentication requests coming from that particular realm.

BCAAA must be installed on a domain controller or member server. If the server where the BCAA service is installed and its domain have a trust relationship with other domains, the user is authenticated automatically by the other domains.

For a server to participate in an IWA Kerberos authentication exchange, it must share a secret with the Kerberos server (called a KDC) and have registered an appropriate Service Principal Name.

For instructions on installing the BCAA service and configuring a Service Principal Name, see [Appendix B: "Using the Authentication/Authorization Agent"](#) on page 215.

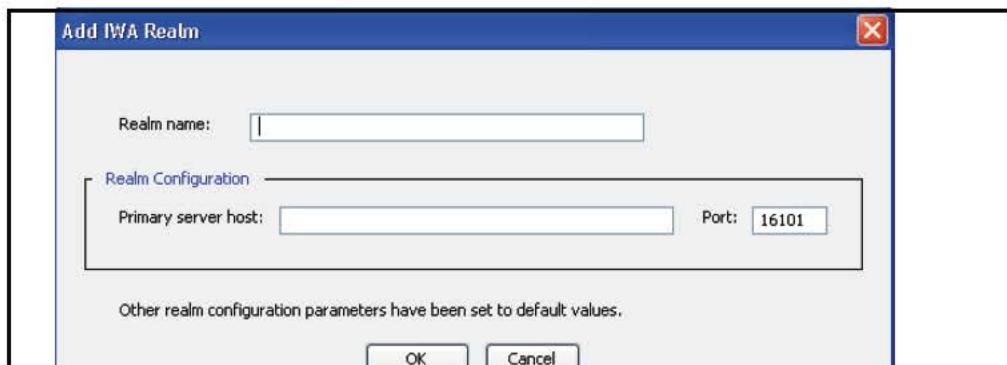
Creating an IWA Realm

To create an IWA realm, you must provide at least the primary host of the IWA server for that realm.

To create an IWA realm:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > IWA > IWA Realms**.

2. Click **New**.

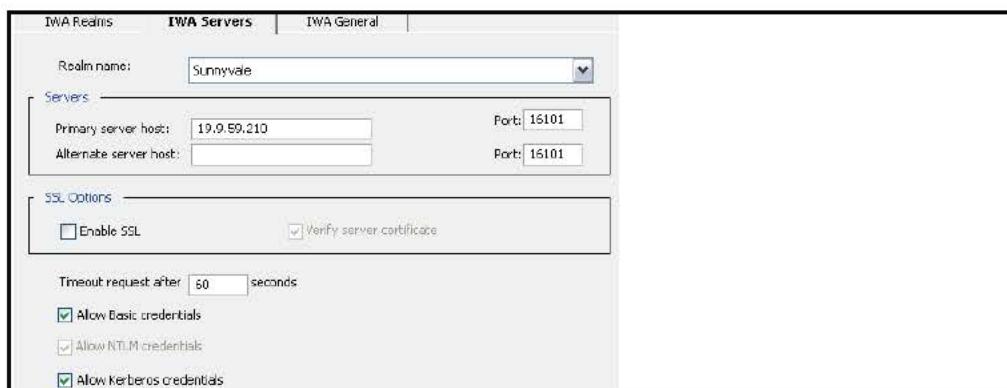


3. In the **Realm name** field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter.
4. Identify the primary server host for the machine running BCAAA. You must enter a valid host or an error message is generated.
5. (Optional) The default port is 16101. You can change the port number if the primary server is listening on a different port.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Select **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

IWA Servers

Once you create an IWA realm, you can use the IWA Servers page to change the current default settings.

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > IWA > IWA Servers**.



2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the IWA realm for which you want to change server properties.

You must define at least one IWA realm (using the **IWA Realms** page) before attempting to set IWA server properties. If the message **Realms must be added in the IWA Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any IWA realms defined.

3. Specify the host and port for the primary IWA server. The default port is **16101**.

4. (Optional) Specify the host and port for the alternate IWA server. The default port is **16101**.
5. (Optional) Under **SSL Options**, click the **SSL enable** checkbox to enable SSL.
6. (Optional) By default, if SSL is enabled, the BCAAA certificate is verified. If you do not want to verify the BCAAA certificate, deselect this checkbox.
7. In the **Timeout Request** field, type the number of seconds the SG appliance allows for each request attempt before timing out. (The default request timeout is **60** seconds.)
8. You can enable or disable support for Basic credentials in the realm by selecting or deselecting the **Allow Basic credentials** checkbox.

At least one Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credential must be enabled. Note that Basic credentials cannot be disabled in the IWA realm if the IWA realm is part of a sequence realm but is not the first realm in the sequence with **try IWA authentication only once** enabled.

You can disable both NTLM and Kerberos credentials, leaving a realm that collects plaintext credentials but validates them against a Windows domain.

Important: The configuration of the realm can have significant security implications. If an IWA realm accepts Basic credentials, the client can automatically downgrade to sending the password in plaintext. Similarly, the client can use NTLM instead of Kerberos.

9. (Optional) You can enable or disable support for NTLM credentials in the realm by selecting or deselecting the **Allow NTLM credentials** checkbox. You can only enable support for Kerberos credentials in the realm if support for NTLM credentials has been enabled.
10. (Optional) You can enable or disable support for Kerberos credentials in the realm by selecting or deselecting the Allow Kerberos credentials. You can only enable support for Kerberos credentials in the realm if support for NTLM credentials has been enabled.
11. Select **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.
12. Repeat the above steps for additional IWA realms, up to a total of 40.

Defining IWA Realm General Properties

The IWA General tab allows you to specify the display name, the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL.

To configure IWA general settings:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > IWA > IWA General**.

| IWA Realms | IWA Servers | IWA General |
|---|---|-------------|
| Realm name: | IWA1 | |
| Display name: | IWA1 | |
| Refresh Times: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all | |
| Credential refresh time: | 900 | seconds |
| Surrogate refresh time: | 900 | seconds |
| Inactivity timeout: | 900 | seconds |
| Rejected credentials time: | 1 | seconds |
| Cookies | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie | | |
| Virtual URL: | www.cfauth.com/ | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Challenge user after logout | | |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the IWA realm for which you want to change properties.
3. If needed, change the IWA realm display name. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be greater than 128 characters and it cannot be null.
4. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
5. Enter the number of seconds in the **Credential refresh time** field. The Credential Refresh Time is the amount of time basic credentials (username and password) are kept on the SG appliance. This feature allows the SG appliance to reduce the load on the authentication server and enables credential spoofing. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will authenticate the user supplied credentials against the cached credentials. If the credentials received do not match the cached credentials, they are forwarded to the authentication server in case the user password changed. After the refresh time expires, the credentials are forwarded to the authentication server for verification.

6. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will verify the user's credentials.

Depending upon the authentication mode and the user-agent, this may result in challenging the end user for credentials.

The main goal of this feature is to verify that the user-agent still has the appropriate credentials.

7. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
8. If you use Basic credentials and want to cache failed authentication attempts (to reduce the load on the authentication service), enter the number of seconds in the **Rejected Credentials time** field. This setting, enabled by default and set to one second, allows failed authentication attempts to be automatically rejected for up to 10 seconds. Any Basic credentials that match a failed result before its cache time expires are rejected without consulting the back-end authentication service. The original failed authentication result is returned for the new request.

All failed authentication attempts can be cached: Bad password, expired account, disabled account, old password, server down.

To disable caching for failed authentication attempts, set the **Rejected Credentials time** field to 0.
9. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
10. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
11. In the Virtual URL field, enter the URL to redirect to when the user needs to be challenged for credentials if using a redirecting authenticate mode.

Note: The virtual URL is not involved if the challenge does not redirect.

You can specify a virtual URL based on the individual realm. For more information on the virtual URL, see “[Understanding Origin-Style Redirection](#)” on page 34.

When NTLM is in use, requests to the virtual URL must be sent to the proxy. This can be done either by transparent redirection or by making the virtual URL hostname resolve to an IP address of the proxy.

When Kerberos is in use:

- The virtual URL hostname must be part of the Kerberos realm (this is using the term *realm* in the Kerberos sense, not the SG appliance sense).
- For a forward proxy, this hostname should be added to the DNS server for the same domain as the Kerberos protected resources so that requests for this address go directly to the SG appliance.

In both NTLM and Kerberos, if single-sign on is desired, then the virtual URL hostname must have no dots and must not be proxied by the browser. The client must be able to resolve this hostname to an IP address of the proxy.

12. Select the **Challenge user after logout** check box if the realm requires the users to enter their credentials after they have logged out.
13. Select **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Related CLI Syntax to Configure an IWA Realm

- To enter configuration mode:

```
SGOS#(config) security iwa create-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config) security iwa edit-realm realm_name
□ The following subcommands are available:
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) alternate-server host [port]
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) display-name display_name
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) ssl enable
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) ssl-verify-agent enable
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) sso-type {query-client | query-dc |
query-dc-client}
```

```
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) refresh-time credential-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) refresh-time rejected-credentials-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} |
verify-ip {enable | disable}}
SGOS#(config iwa realm_name) virtual-url url
```

Creating the CPL

You can create CPL policies now that you have completed IWA realm configuration. Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate for your purposes.

The examples below assume the default policy condition is *allow*. On new systems, the default policy condition is *deny*.

Note: Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file layers.

- Every IWA-authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance.
<Proxy>
 authenticate(IWARealm)
- Group membership is the determining factor in granting access to the SG appliance.
<Proxy>
 authenticate(IWARealm)
<Proxy>
 deny

Notes

- Forms authentication modes cannot be used with an IWA realm that allows only NTLM/Kerberos credentials. If a form mode is in use and the authentication realm is an IWA realm, you receive a configuration error.
- For Windows Internet Explorer IWA users who want true single-sign-on (allowing Internet Explorer to provide your credentials automatically when challenged), you must set the virtual URL to a hostname that is resolvable to the IP address of the SG appliance by the client machines. Dots (for example, 10.1.1.1) are not allowed.

Note: Firefox (1.02 and higher) allows NTLM credentials for single sign-on but not Kerberos.

To define the information in Internet Explorer, navigate to **Internet Options > Security > Local intranet > Sites > Advanced > Web sites**. (For XP, navigate to **Internet Options > Security > Internet > Custom Level**, then select **Automatic logon with current username and password**.)

For Windows Internet Explorer 6.x, add the virtual host address.

- If you use guest authentication, remember that IWA/NTLM realms retrieve authorization data at the same time as the user is authenticated. In some cases, the system can distinguish between an authentication and authorization failure. Where the system cannot determine if the error was due to authentication or authorization, both the authentication and authorization are considered to be failed.

Chapter 9: LDAP Realm Authentication and Authorization

Many companies and organizations use the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) as the directory protocol of choice, enabling software to find an individual user without knowing where that user is located in the network topography.

This section discusses the following topics:

- ❑ “[Overview](#)”
- ❑ “[Creating an LDAP Realm](#)” on page 110
- ❑ “[LDAP Servers](#)” on page 111
- ❑ “[Defining LDAP Base Distinguished Names](#)” on page 112
- ❑ “[LDAP Search & Groups Tab \(Authorization and Group Information\)](#)” on page 114
- ❑ “[Customizing LDAP Objectclass Attribute Values](#)” on page 116
- ❑ “[Defining LDAP General Realm Properties](#)” on page 117
- ❑ “[Creating the CPL](#)” on page 119

Overview

Blue Coat supports both LDAP v2 and LDAP v3, but recommends LDAP v3 because it uses Transport Layer Security (TLS) and SSL to provide a secure connection between the SG appliance and the LDAP server.

An LDAP directory, either version 2 or version 3, consists of a simple tree hierarchy. An LDAP directory might span multiple LDAP servers. In LDAP v3, servers can return referrals to other servers back to the client, allowing the client to follow those referrals if desired.

Directory services simplify administration; any additions or changes made once to the information in the directory are immediately available to all users and directory-enabled applications, devices, and SG appliances.

The SG appliance supports the use of external LDAP database servers to authenticate and authorize users on a per-group or per-attribute basis.

LDAP group-based authentication for the SG appliance can be configured to support any LDAP-compliant directory including:

- ❑ Microsoft Active Directory Server
- ❑ Novell NDS/eDirectory Server
- ❑ Netscape/Sun iPlanet Directory Server
- ❑ Other

The SG appliance also provides the ability to search for a single user in a single root of an LDAP directory information tree (DIT), and to search in multiple Base Distinguished Names (DNs).

You can configure a LDAP realm to use SSL when communicating to the LDAP server.

Configuring LDAP involves the following steps:

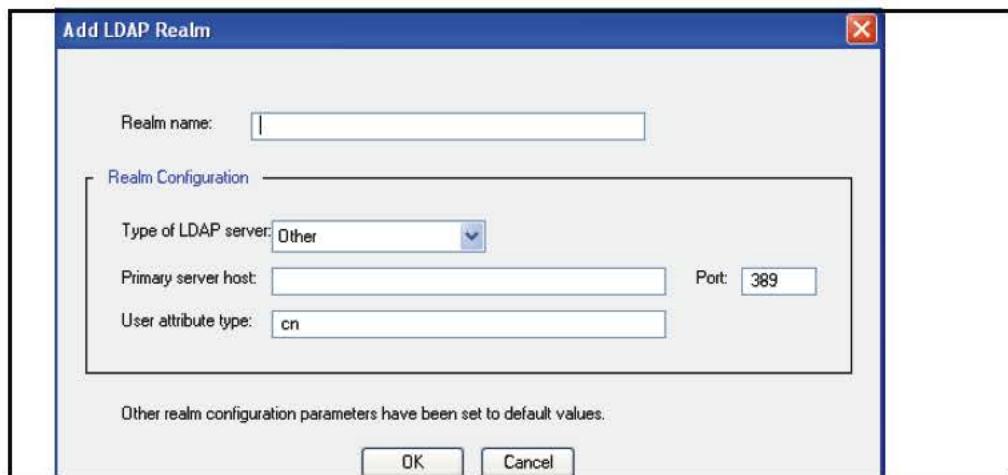
- ❑ Creating a realm (up to 40) and configuring basic settings.

- Configuring an LDAP server
- Defining LDAP Base Distinguished Names
- Defining Authorization and Group information
- Configuring general LDAP realm settings
- Creating policy

Creating an LDAP Realm

To create an LDAP realm:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > LDAP > LDAP Realms.
2. Click New.



3. In the Real name field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter.
4. From the Type of LDAP server drop-down list, select the specific LDAP server.
5. Specify the host and port for the primary LDAP server. The host must be entered. The default port number is 389.
6. In the User attribute type field, specify the default user attribute type for the type of LDAP server.

Microsoft Active Directory Server sAMAccountName=

Novell NDS/eDirectory Server/Other cn=

Netscape/iPlanet Directory Server uid=

7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

LDAP Servers

Once you have created an LDAP realm, you can use the LDAP Servers page to change the current default settings.

To edit LDAP server properties:

Note that the default values exist. You do not need to change these values if the default settings are acceptable.

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > LDAP > LDAP Servers.

2. From the **Realm Name** drop-down list, select the LDAP realm for which you want to change server properties.
3. From the **Type of LDAP server** drop-down list, select the specific LDAP server.
4. From the **LDAP Protocol Version** drop-down list, select **v2** for LDAP v2 support. LDAP v3 is the default.
If you use LDAP v3, you can select **Follow referrals** to allow the client to follow referrals to other servers. (This feature is not available with LDAP v2.) The default is **Disabled**.
5. Specify the host and port for the primary LDAP server. The host must be entered. The default port number is **389**.
6. (Optional) Specify the host and port for the alternate LDAP server. The default port is **389**.
7. (Optional) Under **SSL Options**, select **Enable SSL** to enable SSL. You can only select this option if you are using LDAP v3.
8. (Optional) By default, if SSL is enabled, the LDAP server certificate is verified. If you do not want to verify the server certificate, disable this setting.
9. (Optional) Change the timeout request for the server from its default of **60** seconds.
10. If the LDAP server is configured to expect case-sensitive usernames and passwords, select **Case sensitive**.
11. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.
12. Repeat the above steps for additional LDAP realms, up to a total of 40.

Defining LDAP Base Distinguished Names

The SG appliance allows you to specify multiple Base Distinguished Names (DNs) to search per realm, along with the ability to specify a specific branch of a Base DN.

A *Base DN* identifies the entry that is starting point of the search. You must specify at least one non-null base-DN for LDAP authentication to succeed.

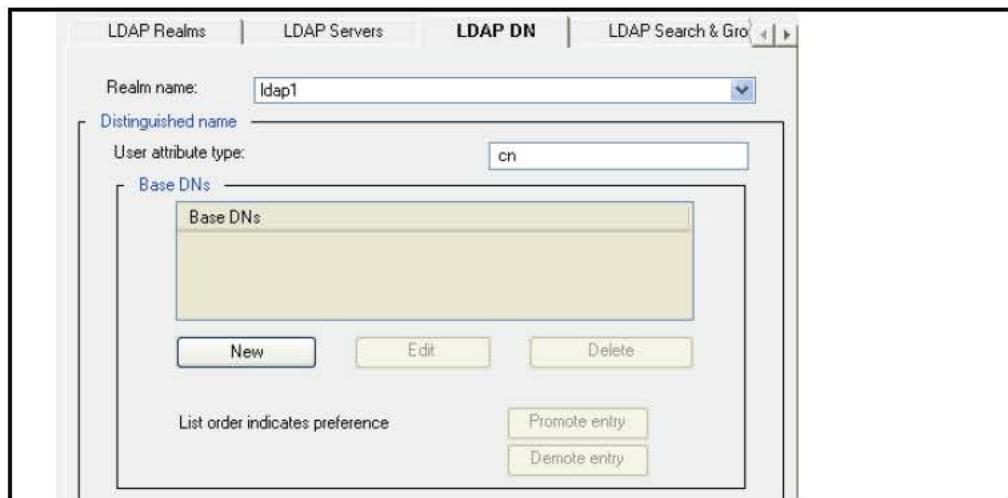
You must enter complete DNs. See the table below for some examples of distinguished name attributes.

Table 9-1. Distinguished Name Attributes

| DN Attribute Syntax | Parameter Description |
|---|---|
| <code>c=country</code> | Country in which the user or group resides. Examples: <code>c=US, c=GB</code> . |
| <code>cn=common name</code> | Full name of person or object defined by the entry. Examples: <code>cn=David Smith, cn=Administrators, cn=4th floor printer</code> |
| <code>dc=domain component</code> | Component name of a domain. Examples: <code>cn=David Smith, ou=Sales, dc=MyDomain, dc=com</code> |
| <code>mail=e-mail address</code> | User or group e-mail address. |
| <code>givenName=given name</code> | User's first name. |
| <code>l=locality</code> | Locality in which the user or group resides. This can be the name of a city, country, township, or other geographic regions. Examples: <code>l=Seattle, l=Pacific Northwest, l=King County</code> . |
| <code>o=organization</code> | Organization to which the user or group is a member. Examples: <code>o=Blue Coat Inc, o=UW</code> . |
| <code>ou=organizational unit</code> | Unit within an organization. Examples: <code>ou=Sales, ou=IT, ou=Compliance</code> . |
| <code>st=state or province</code> | State or province in which the user or group resides. Examples: <code>st=Washington, st=Florida</code> . |
| <code>userPassword=password</code> | Password created by a user. |
| <code>streetAddress=street address</code> | Street number and address of user or group defined by the entry. Example: <code>streetAddress= 4240 North Mary Avenue, Sunnyvale, California 94085</code> . |
| <code>sn=surname</code> | User's last name. |
| <code>telephoneNumber=telephone</code> | User or group telephone number. |
| <code>title=title</code> | User's job title. |
| <code>uid=user ID</code> | Name that uniquely identifies the person or object defined by the entry. Examples: <code>uid=ssmith, uid=kjones</code> . |

To define searchable LDAP base DNs:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > LDAP > LDAP DN.



2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the LDAP realm for which you want to change DN properties.
3. In the **User attribute type** field, the SG appliance has entered the default user attribute type for the type of LDAP server you specified when creating the realm.

Microsoft Active Directory Server SAMAccountName=

Novell NDS/eDirectory Server/Other cn=

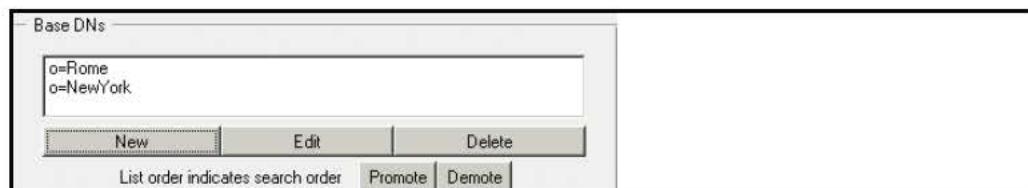
Netscape/iPlanet Directory Server uid=

If you entered information correctly when creating the realm, you do not need to change the User attribute type in this step. If you do need to change or edit the entry, do so directly in the field.

4. Enter as many Base DNs as you need for the realm. Assume, for example, that Sample_Company has offices in New York and Lisbon, each with its own Base DN. A simplified directory information tree is illustrated below.



To specify entries for the **Base DNs** field, click **New**, enter the Base DN, and click **OK**. Repeat for multiple Base DNs. To search all of Sample_Company, enter **o** values:



To search the manufacturing organizations, rather than starting at the top, enter **ou** and **o** values.



You can add, edit, and delete Base DNs for an SG appliance to search. You can also select an individual DN and move it up or down in the list with the **Promote** and **Demote** buttons. The appliance searches multiple DNs in the order listed, starting at the top and working down.

5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

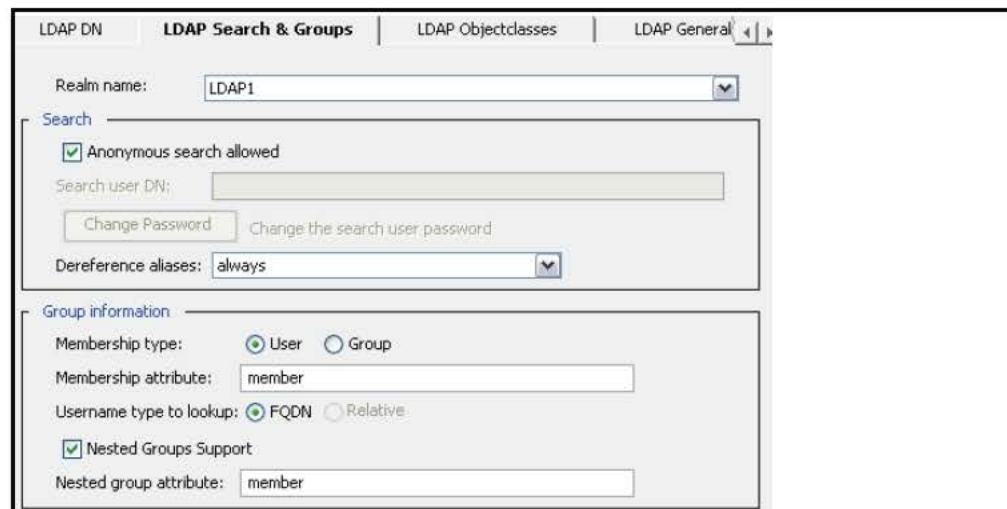
LDAP Search & Groups Tab (Authorization and Group Information)

After creating an LDAP realm, providing at least the required fields of the LDAP server for that realm, and defining base DNs for the realm, you must define authorization properties for each LDAP realm you created.

Note: Authorization decisions are completely handled by policy. The groups that the appliance looks up and queries are derived from the groups specified in policy in group= conditions, attribute= conditions, and has_attribute conditions. If you do not have any of those conditions, then Blue Coat does not look up any groups or attributes to make policy decisions based on authorization.

To define LDAP realm authorization properties:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > LDAP > LDAP Search & Groups.



2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the LDAP realm for which you want to specify authorization information.
3. Specify whether to allow anonymous search or to enforce user authentication before allowing a search.

Some directories require a valid user to be able to perform an LDAP search; they do not allow *anonymous bind*. (Active Directory is one such example.) For these directories, you must specify a valid fully-qualified distinguished username and the password that permits directory access privileges. (For example, **cn=user1,cn=users,dc=bluecoat,dc=com** is a possible fully-qualified distinguished name.)

To permit users to anonymously bind to the LDAP service, select **Anonymous Search Allowed**. For example, with Netscape/iPlanet Directory Server, when anonymous access is allowed, no username or password is required by the LDAP client to retrieve information.

The LDAP directory attributes available for an anonymous client are typically a subset of those available when a valid user distinguished name and password have been used as search credentials.

To enforce user authentication before binding to the LDAP service, deselect **Anonymous Search Allowed**, and set the **Search User DN** and **Search User Password**. Enter a user distinguished name in the **Search User DN** field. This username can identify a single user or a user object that acts as a proxy for multiple users (a pool of administrators, for example). A search user distinguished name can be up to 512 characters long.

You can set or change the user password by clicking **Change Password**. This password can be up to 64 alphanumeric characters long.

You might want to create a separate user (such as Blue Coat, for example) instead of using an Administrator distinguished name and password.

The **Dereference level** field has four values—**always, finding, never, searching**—that allow you to specify when to search for a specific object rather than search for the object's alias. The default is **Always**.

4. Group Information

Membership type and Membership attribute: The SG appliance enters the appropriate default:

- Microsoft Active Directory:
Membership type: user
Membership attribute type: memberOf
- Netscape/Sun iPlanet:
Membership type:group
Membership attribute type:uniqueMember
- Novell NDS eDirectory
Membership type:group
Membership attribute type:member
- Other
Membership type:user
Membership attribute type:member

Username type to lookup: Select either **FQDN** or **Relative**. Only one can be selected at a time.

- **Relative** can only be selected in the membership type is **Group**.
- **FQDN** indicates that the lookup is done only on the user object. **FQDN** can be selected when the membership type is either **Group** or **User**.

5. Nested LDAP: If the LDAP server you use does not natively support group membership tests of nested groups, you can select the **Nested LDAP** checkbox.
6. Nested group attribute: For **other**, **ad** and **nds**, the default attribute is **member**. For **iPlanet**, the attribute is **uniqueMember**.
7. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Customizing LDAP Objectclass Attribute Values

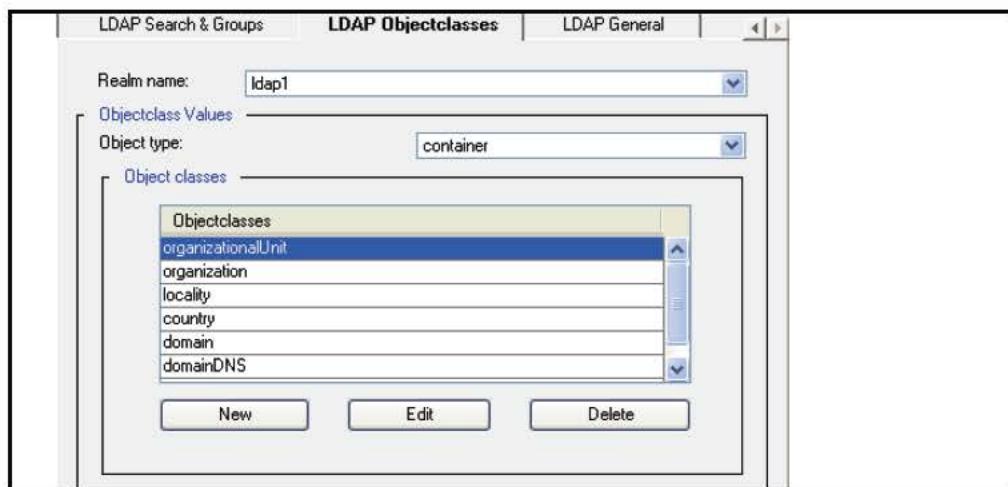
The *objectclass* attributes on an LDAP object define the type of object an entry is. For example, a user entry might have an *objectclass* attribute value of *person* while a group entry might have an *objectclass* attribute value of *group*.

The *objectclass* attribute values defined on a particular entry can differ among LDAP servers. The *objectclass* attribute values are attribute values only, they are not DNs of any kind.

Currently, the *objectclass* attribute values are used by Blue Coat during a VPM browse of an LDAP server. If an administrator wants to browse the groups in a particular realm, the SG appliance searches the LDAP server for objects that have *objectclass* attribute values matching those in the group list and in the container list. The list of *objectclass* attribute values in the container list is needed so that containers that contain groups can be fetched and expanded correctly.

To customize LDAP objectclass attribute values:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > LDAP > LDAP Objectclasses.



2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the LDAP realm whose objectclasses you want to modify.
3. From the **Object type** drop-down list, select the type of object: **container**, **group**, or **user**.
4. To create or edit an object for the specified objectclass, click **New** or **Edit**. (The only difference is whether you are adding or editing an objectclass value.)
5. Enter or edit the objectclass, and click **OK**.
6. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Defining LDAP General Realm Properties

The LDAP General page allows you to specify the display name, the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL.

To configure general LDAP settings:

- Select Configuration > Authentication > LDAP > LDAP General.

| LDAP Realms | LDAP Servers | LDAP DN | LDAP Search & Groups | LDAP Objectclasses | LDAP General |
|---|---|---------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| Realm name: | LDAP1 | | | | |
| Display name: | LDAP1 | | | | |
| Refresh Times: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all | | | | |
| Credential refresh time: | 900 | seconds | | | |
| Surrogate refresh time: | 900 | seconds | | | |
| Authorization refresh time: | 900 | seconds | | | |
| Inactivity timeout: | 900 | seconds | | | |
| Rejected credentials time: | 1 | seconds | | | |
| Cookies | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies | | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie | | | | | |
| VIRTUAL URL: | www.cfauth.com/ | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Challenge user after logout | | | | | |

- From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the LDAP realm for which you want to change properties.
- If needed, give the LDAP realm a display name. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be greater than 128 characters and it cannot be null.
- Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
- Enter the number of seconds in the **Credential refresh time** field. The Credential Refresh Time is the amount of time basic credentials (username and password) are kept on the SG appliance. This feature allows the SG appliance to reduce the load on the authentication server and enables credential spoofing. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will authenticate the user supplied credentials against the cached credentials. If the credentials received do not match the cached credentials, they are forwarded to the authentication server in case the user password changed. After the refresh time expires, the credentials are forwarded to the authentication server for verification.

- Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will verify the user's credentials. Depending upon the authentication mode and the user-agent, this may result in challenging the end user for credentials.

The main goal of this feature is to verify that the user-agent still has the appropriate credentials.

7. Enter the number of seconds in the **Authorization refresh time** field. The Authorization Refresh Time allows you to manage how often the authorization data is verified with the authentication realm. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.
8. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
9. If you use Basic credentials and want to cache failed authentication attempts (to reduce the load on the authentication service), enter the number of seconds in the **Rejected Credentials time** field. This setting, enabled by default and set to one second, allows failed authentication attempts to be automatically rejected for up to 10 seconds. Any Basic credentials that match a failed result before its cache time expires are rejected without consulting the back-end authentication service. The original failed authentication result is returned for the new request.

All failed authentication attempts can be cached: Bad password, expired account, disabled account, old password, server down.

To disable caching for failed authentication attempts, set the **Rejected Credentials time** field to 0.

10. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
11. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
12. You can specify a virtual URL. For more information on the virtual URL, see ["Understanding Origin-Style Redirection"](#) on page 34.
13. Select the **Challenge user after logout** check box if the realm requires the users to enter their credentials after they have logged out.
14. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Related CLI Syntax to Manage an LDAP Realm

- ❑ To enter configuration mode:

```
SGOS#(config) security ldap create-realm {ad | iplanet | nds | other}
realm_name [base_dn] primary_host [primary_port]
#(config) security ldap edit-realm realm_name
```

- ❑ The following subcommands are available:

```
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) alternate-server host [port]
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) cache-duration seconds
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) case-sensitive {disable | enable}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) default-group-name default_group_name
```

```
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) display-name display_name
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) distinguished-name user-attribute-type
user_attribute_type
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) distinguished-name base-dn {add | demote
| promote | remove} {base_dn | clear}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) exit
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) membership-attribute attribute_name
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) membership-type {group | user}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) membership-username {full | relative}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) nested-group-attribute attribute_name
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) no alternate-server
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) no default-group-name
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) no membership-attribute
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) objectclass container {add | remove}
{container_objectclass | clear}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) objectclass group {add | remove}
{group_objectclass | clear}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) objectclass user {add | remove}
{user_objectclass | clear}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) protocol-version {2 | 3}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) referrals-follow {disable | enable}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) rename new_realm_name
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) search anonymous {disable | enable}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) search dereference {always | finding |
never | searching}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) search encrypted-password
encrypted_password
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) search password password
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) search user-dn user_dn
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) server-type {ad | ipplanet | nds | other}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) spoof-authentication {none | origin |
proxy}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) ssl enable
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) ssl-verify-agent enable
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) sso-type {query-client | query-dc |
query-dc-client}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) refresh-time credential-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) refresh-time rejected-credentials-
refresh seconds
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) refresh-time authorization-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} |
verify-ip {enable | disable}}
SGOS#(config ldap realm_name) virtual-url url
```

Creating the CPL

Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate for your purposes.

Note: Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file layers.

Be aware that the default policy condition for these examples is *allow*. The default policy condition on new SGOS 5.x systems is *deny*.

- ❑ Every LDAP-authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance.

```
<Proxy>
    authenticate(LDAPRealm)
```
- ❑ Group membership is the determining factor in granting access to the SG appliance.

```
<Proxy>
    authenticate(LDAPRealm)
<Proxy>
    group="cn=proxyusers, ou=groups, o=myco"
    deny
```
- ❑ A subnet definition determines the members of a group, in this case, members of the Human Resources department.

```
<Proxy>
    authenticate(LDAPRealm)
<Proxy>
    Define subnet HRSubnet
        192.168.0.0/16
        10.0.0.0/24
    End subnet HRSubnet
    [Rule] client_address=HRSubnet
        url.domain=monster.com
        url.domain=hotjobs.com
        deny
    .
    .
    .
    [Rule]
        deny
```

Notes

If you use guest authentication/authorization, note that:

- ❑ LDAP realms provide split authorization, and it is possible to be successfully authenticated but have authorization fail.
- ❑ If the LDAP realm validate authorized user command is disabled and the user does not exist in the authorization realm, authorization is considered a success and the user is assigned to the default group if there is one configured and it is of interest to policy.

Chapter 10: Local Realm Authentication and Authorization

Using a Local realm is appropriate when the network topography does not include external authentication or when you want to add users and administrators to be used by the SG appliance only.

The Local realm (you can create up to 40) uses a *Local User List*, a collection of users and groups stored locally on the SG appliance. You can create up to 50 different Local User Lists. Multiple Local realms can reference the same list at the same time, although each realm can only reference one list at a time. The default list used by the realm can be changed at any time.

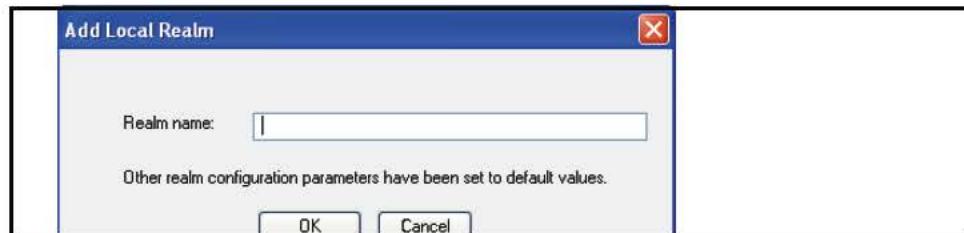
This section discusses the following topics:

- “Creating a Local Realm”
- “Changing Local Realm Properties” on page 121
- “Defining the Local User List” on page 123
- “Creating the CPL” on page 129

Creating a Local Realm

To create a local realm:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Local > Local Realms**.
2. Click **New**.



3. In the **Realm name** field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name must start with a letter.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Changing Local Realm Properties

Once you have created a Local realm, you can modify the properties.

To define or change local realm properties:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Local > Local Main**.

The screenshot shows the 'Local Main' configuration page for a realm named 'Local test'. It includes fields for 'Display name' (Local_test), 'Local user list' (local_user_database), and various refresh times (Surrogate refresh time: 900 seconds, Authorization refresh time: 900 seconds, Inactivity timeout: 900 seconds). It also includes sections for 'Cookies' (Use persistent cookies checked, Verify the IP address in the cookie checked) and 'Virtual URL'.

| Local Realms | | Local Main |
|---|---|------------|
| Realm name: | Local test | |
| Display name: | Local_test | |
| Local user list: | local_user_database | |
| Refresh Times: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all | |
| Surrogate refresh time: | 900 | seconds |
| Authorization refresh time: | 900 | seconds |
| Inactivity timeout: | 900 | seconds |
| Cookies | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie | | |
| Virtual URL: | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Challenge user after logout | | |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the **Local** realm for which you want to change properties.
3. **Display name:** The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be greater than 128 characters and it cannot be null.
4. **Local user list:** the local user list from the drop-down list.
5. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
6. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.
Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will verify the user's credentials.
Depending upon the authentication mode and the user-agent, this may result in challenging the end user for credentials.
The main goal of this feature is to verify that the user-agent still has the appropriate credentials.
7. Enter the number of seconds in the **Authorization refresh time** field. The Authorization Refresh Time allows you to manage how often the authorization data is verified with the authentication realm. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.
8. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
9. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
10. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.

11. You can specify a virtual URL. For more information on the virtual URL, see “[Understanding Origin-Style Redirection](#)” on page 34.
12. Select the **Challenge user after logout** check box if the realm requires the users to enter their credentials after they have logged out.
13. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Related CLI Syntax to Define or Change Local Realm Properties

- ❑ To enter configuration mode:

```
SGOS#(config) security local create-realm realm_name  
SGOS#(config) security local edit-realm realm_name
```

- ❑ The following subcommands are available:

```
SGOS#(config local realm_name) display-name display_name  
SGOS#(config local realm_name) local-user-list local_user_list_name  
SGOS#(config local realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds  
SGOS#(config local realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh seconds  
SGOS#(config local realm_name) refresh-time authorization-refresh  
seconds  
SGOS#(config local realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} |  
verify-ip {enable | disable}}  
SGOS#(config local realm_name) virtual-url url
```

Notes

If you use guest authentication/authorization, note that:

- ❑ Local realms provide split authorization, and it is possible to be successfully authenticated but have authorization fail.
- ❑ If the Local realm validate authorized user command is disabled and the user does not exist in the authorization realm, authorization is considered a success and the user is assigned to the default group if there is one configured and it is of interest to policy.

Defining the Local User List

Defining the local user list involves the following steps:

- ❑ Create a list or customize the default list for your needs.
- ❑ Upload a user list or add users and groups through the CLI.
- ❑ Associate the list with the realm.

Creating a Local User List

The user list *local_user_database* is created on a new system or after an upgrade. It is empty on a new system. If a password file existed on the SG appliance before an upgrade, then the list contains all users and groups from the password file; the initial default user list is *local_user_database*. If a new user list is created, the default can be changed to point to it instead by invoking the *security local-user-list default list list_name* command. You can create up to 50 new lists with 10,000 users each.

Lists can be uploaded or you can directly edit lists through the CLI. If you want to upload a list, it must be created as a text file using the *.htpasswd* format of the SG appliance.

Each user entry in the list consists of:

- username
- List of groups
- Hashed password
- Enabled/disabled boolean searches

A list that has been populated looks like this:

```
SGOS#(config) security local-user-list edit list_name
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) view
list20
Lockout parameters:
  Max failed attempts: 60
  Lockout duration:    3600
  Reset interval:      7200
Users:
admin1
  Hashed Password: $1$TvEzpZE$Z2A/OuJU3w5LnEONDHkmg .
  Enabled: true
  Groups:
    group1
admin2
  Hashed Password: $1$sKJvNB3r$xsInBU./2hhBz6xDAHpND .
  Enabled: true
  Groups:
    group1
    group2
admin3
  Hashed Password: $1$duuCUT30$kesdIkZVS4RyFz47G78X20
  Enabled: true
  Groups:
    group2
Groups:
  group1
  group2
```

To create a new empty local user list:

```
SGOS#(config) security local-user-list create list_name
```

Username

The username must be case-sensitively unique, and can be no more than 64 characters long. All characters are valid, except for a colon (:).

A new local user is enabled by default and has an empty password.

List of Groups

You cannot add a user to a group unless the group has previously been created in the list. The group name must be case-sensitively unique, and can be no more than 64 characters long. All characters are valid, except for colon (:).

The groups can be created in the list; however, their user permissions are defined through policies only.

Hashed Password

The hashed password must be a valid UNIX DES or MD5 password whose plain-text equivalent cannot be more than 64 characters long.

To populate the local user list using an off-box .htpasswd file, continue with the next section. To populate the local user list using the SG appliance CLI, go to “[Defining the Local User List](#)” on page 123.

Populating a List using the .htpasswd File

To add users to a text file in .htpasswd format, enter the following UNIX htpasswd command:

```
prompt> htpasswd [-c] .htpasswd username
```

The -c option creates a new .htpasswd file and should only be used for the very first .htpasswd command. You can overwrite any existing .htpasswd file by using the -c option.

After entering this command, you are prompted to enter a password for the user identified by *username*. The entered password is hashed and added to the user entry in the text file. If the -m option is specified, the password is hashed using MD5; otherwise, UNIX DES is used.

Important: Because the -c option overwrites the existing file, do not use the option if you are adding users to an existing .htpasswd file.

Once you have added the users to the .htpasswd file, you can manually edit the file to add user groups. When the .htpasswd file is complete, it should have the following format:

```
user:encrypted_password:group1,group2,...  
user:encrypted_password:group1,group2,...
```

Note: You can also modify the users and groups once they are loaded on the SG appliance. To modify the list once it is on the appliance, see “[Populating a Local User List through the SG Appliance](#)” on page 126.

Uploading the .htpasswd File

When the .htpasswd file is uploaded, the entries from it either replace all entries in the default local user list or append to the entries in the default local user list. One default local user list is specified on the SG appliance.

To set the default local user list use the command `security local-user-list default list list_name`. The list specified must exist.

To specify that the uploaded .htpasswd file replace all existing user entries in the default list, enter `security local-user-list default append-to-default disable` before uploading the .htpasswd file.

To specify that the .htpasswd file entries should be appended to the default list instead, enter `security local-user-list default append-to-default enable`.

To upload the .htpasswd file:

The .htpasswd file is loaded onto the SG appliance with a Perl script found at:

```
http://download.bluecoat.com/release/tools/set_auth.zip
```

Unzip the file, which contains the `set_auth.pl` script.

Note: To use the `set_auth.pl` script, you must have Perl binaries on the system where the script is running.

To load the .htpasswd file:

```
prompt> set_auth.pl username password  
path_to_.htpasswd_file_on_local_machine ip_address_of_the_SG  
where username and password are valid administrator credentials for the SG  
appliance.
```

Populating a Local User List through the SG Appliance

You can populate a local user list from scratch or modify a local user list that was populated by loading an .htpasswd file.

To create a new, empty local user list:

```
SGOS#(config) security local-user-list create list_name
```

To modify an existing local user list (can be empty or contain users):

- To enter configuration mode:

```
SGOS#(config) security local-user-list edit list_name  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name)
```

- The following subcommands are available:

Note: To add users and groups to the list, enter the following commands, beginning with groups, since they must exist before you can add them to a user account.

```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) group create group1  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) group create group2  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) group create group3  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) user create username  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) user edit username  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name username) group add groupname1  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name username) group add groupname2  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name username) password password  
-or-  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name username) hashed-password  
hashed-password
```

Note: If you enter a plain-text password, the SG appliance hashes the password. If you enter a hashed password, the appliance does not hash it again.

1. (Optional) The user account is enabled by default. To disable a user account:

```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name username) disable  
ok
```

2. Repeat for each user you want added to the list.

To view the results of an individual user account:

Remain in the user account submode and enter the following command:

```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name username) view
admin1
    Hashed Password: $1$TvEzpZE$Z2A/OuJU3w5LnEONDHkmg.
    Enabled: true
    Failed Logins: 6
    Groups:
        group1
```

Note: If a user has no failed logins, the statistic does not display.

To view the users in the entire list:

Exit the user account submode and enter:

```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name username) exit
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) view
list20
Lockout parameters:
    Max failed attempts: 60
    Lockout duration:      3600
    Reset interval:        7200
Users:
admin1
    Hashed Password: $1$TvEzpZE$Z2A/OuJU3w5LnEONDHkmg.
    Enabled: true
    Groups:
        group1
admin2
    Hashed Password: $1$sKJvNB3r$xsInBU./2hhBz6xDAHpND.
    Enabled: true
    Groups:
        group1
        group2
admin3
    Hashed Password: $1$duuCUT30$keSdIkZVS4RyFz47G78X20
    Enabled: true
    Groups:
        group2
Groups:
    group1
    group2
```

To view all the lists on the SG appliance:

```
SGOS#(config) show security local-user-list
Default List: local_user_database
Append users loaded from file to default list: false
local_user_database
Lockout parameters:
    Max failed attempts: 60
    Lockout duration:      3600
    Reset interval:        7200
```

```
Users:  
    Groups:  
test1  
    Users:  
        Groups:
```

To delete groups associated with a user:

```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name username) group remove  
group_name
```

To delete users from a list:

```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) user delete username  
This will permanently delete the object. Proceed with deletion?  
(y or n) y  
ok
```

To delete all users from a list:

```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) user clear  
ok
```

The groups remain but have no users.

To delete all groups from a list:

```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) group clear  
ok
```

The users remain but do not belong to any groups.

Enhancing Security Settings for the Local User List

You can configure a local user database so that each user account is automatically disabled if too many failed login attempts occur for the account in too short a period, indicating a brute-force password attack on the SG appliance. The security settings are available through the CLI only.

Available security settings are:

- Maximum failed attempts: The maximum number of failed password attempts allowed for an account. When this threshold is reached, the account is disabled (locked). If this is zero, there is no limit. The default is 60 attempts.
- Lockout duration: The time after which a locked account is re-enabled. If this is zero, the account does not automatically re-enable, but instead remains locked until manually enabled. The default is 3600 seconds (one hour).
- Reset interval: The time after which a failed password count resets after the last failed password attempt. If this is zero, the failed password count resets only when the account is enabled or when its password is changed. The default is 7200 seconds (two hours).

These values are enabled by default on the system for all user account lists. You can change the defaults for each list that exists on the system.

To change the security settings for a specific user account list:

1. Enter the following commands from the (config) prompt:

```
SGOS#(config) security local-user-list edit list_name  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) lockout-duration seconds  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) max-failed-attempts attempts
```

- ```
SGOS#(config local-user-list list_name) reset-interval seconds
```
2. (Optional) View the settings:  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list\_name) **view**  
listname  
Lockout parameters:  
Max failed attempts: 45  
Lockout duration: 3600  
Reset interval: 0
  3. (Optional) To disable any of these settings:  
SGOS#(config local-user-list list\_name) **no [lockout-duration | max-failed-attempts | reset-interval]**

## Creating the CPL

Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate for your purposes. (The default policy in these examples is deny.)

---

**Note:** Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file layers.

---

- ❑ Every Local-authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance.  
<Proxy>  
    authenticate(LocalRealm)
- ❑ Group membership is the determining factor in granting access to the SG appliance.  
<Proxy>  
    authenticate(LocalRealm)  
<Proxy>  
    group="group1" allow
- ❑ A subnet definition determines the members of a group, in this case, members of the Human Resources department.  
<Proxy>  
    authenticate(LocalRealm)  
<Proxy>  
    Define subnet HRSUBNET  
        192.168.0.0/16  
        10.0.0.0/24  
    End subnet HRSUBNET  
    [Rule] client\_address=HRSUBNET  
        url.domain=monster.com  
        url.domain=hotjobs.com  
        deny  
    .  
    .  
    .  
    [Rule]  
        deny



## *Chapter 11: Policy Substitution Realm*

A Policy Substitution realm provides a mechanism for identifying and authorizing users based on information in the request to the SG appliance. The realm uses information in the request and about the client to identify the user. The realm is configured to construct user identity information by using policy substitutions.

If authorization data (such as group membership) is needed, the realm can be configured with the name of an associated authorization realm (such as LDAP or local). If an authorization realm is configured, the fully-qualified username is sent to the authorization realm's authority to collect authorization data.

You can use policy substitutions realms in many situations. For example, a Policy Substitution realm can be configured to identify the user:

- based on the results of a NetBIOS over TCP/IP query to the client computer.
- based on the results of a reverse DNS lookup of the client computer's IP address.
- based on the contents of a header in the request. This might be used when a downstream device is authenticating the user.
- based on the results of an Ident query to the client computer.

The Policy Substitution realm is used typically for best-effort user discovery, mainly for logging and subsequent reporting purposes, without the need to authenticate the user. Be aware that if you use Policy Substitution realms to provide granular policy on a user, it might not be very secure because the information used to identify the user can be forged.

This section discusses the following topics:

- “How Policy Substitution Realms Work”
- “Creating a Policy Substitution Realm” on page 134
- “Configuring User Information” on page 134
- “Creating a List of Users to Ignore” on page 136
- “Configuring Authorization” on page 137
- “Defining Policy Substitution Realm General Properties” on page 138

### **How Policy Substitution Realms Work**

The realm is configured the same way as other realms, except that the realm uses policy substitutions to construct the username and full username from information available in and about the request. Any policy substitution whose value is available at client logon can be used to provide information for the name.

The Policy Substitution realm, in addition to allowing you to create and manipulate realm properties, such as the name of the realm and the number of seconds that credential cache entries from this realm are valid, also contains attributes to determine the user's identity. The user's identity can be determined by explicitly defining the usernames or by searching a LDAP server. The following two fields are used to determine the user's identity by definition:

- A user field: A string containing policy substitutions that describes how to construct the simple username.
- A full username field: A string containing policy substitutions that describes how to construct the full username, which is used for authorization realm lookups. This can either be an LDAP FQDN when the authorization realm is an LDAP realm, or a simple name when local realms are being used for authorization.

---

**Note:** The user field and username field must include at least one substitution that successfully evaluates in order for the user to be considered authenticated.

---

If no policy substitutions exist that map directly to the user's simple and full usernames but there are substitutions that map to attributes on the user on the LDAP server, the user's identity can be determined by searching the LDAP server. The following fields are used to determine the user's identity by LDAP search:

- LDAP search realm: The LDAP realm on the SG appliance that corresponds to the LDAP server where the user resides
- Search filter: An LDAP search filter as defined in RFC 2254 to be used in the LDAP search operation. Similar to the explicitly defined username and full username fields, the search filter string can contain policy substitutions that are available based on the user's request. The search filter string must be escaped according to RFC 2254. The policy substitution modifier `escape_ldap_filter` is recommended to use with any policy substitutions that could contain characters that need to be escaped. It will escape the policy substitution value per RFC 2254.

---

**Note:** The search filter must include at least one substitution that successfully evaluates before the LDAP search will be issued and the user authenticated.

---

- User attribute: The attribute on the search result entry that corresponds to the user's full username. If the search result entry is a user entry, the attribute is usually the FQDN of that entry. The user's full username is the value of the specified attribute. If the attribute value is an FQDN, the user's simple username is the value of the first attribute in the FQDN. If the attribute value is not an FQDN, the simple username is the same as the full username.

---

**Note:** Policy Substitution realms never challenge for credentials. If the username and full username cannot be determined from the configured substitutions, authentication in the Policy Substitution realm fails.

---

Remember that Policy Substitution realms do not require an authorization realm. If no authorization realm is configured, the user is not a member of any group. The effect this has on the user depends on the authorization policy. If the policy does not make any decisions based on groups, you do not need to specify an authorization realm. Also, if your policy is such that it works as desired when all Policy Substitution realm users are not in any group, you do not have to specify an authorization realm.

Once the Policy Substitution realm is configured, you must create policy to authenticate the user.

---

**Note:** If all the policy substitutions fail, authentication fails. If any policy substitution works, authentication succeeds in the realm.

---

### *Example*

The following is an example of how to use substitutions with Policy Substitution realms.

#### *Assumptions:*

- ❑ The user susie.smith is logged in to a Windows client computer at IP address 10.25.36.47.
- ❑ The Windows messenger service is enabled on the client computer.
- ❑ The client computer is in the domain AUTHTEAM.
- ❑ The customer has an LDAP directory in which group information is stored. The DN for a user's group information is  
`cn=username, cn=users, dc=computer_domain, dc=company, dc=com`  
where `username` is the name of the user, and `computer_domain` is the domain to which the user's computer belongs.
- ❑ A login script that runs on the client computer updates a DNS server so that a reverse DNS lookup for 10.25.36.47 results in  
`susie.smith.authteam.location.company.com`.

#### *Results:*

Under these circumstances, the following username and full username attributes might be used:

- ❑ **Username:** `$(netbios.messenger-username)@$ (client.address)`.  
This results in `SUSIE.SMITH@10.25.36.47`.
- ❑ **Full username:** `cn=$(netbios.messenger-username), cn=users, dc=$(netbios.computer-domain), dc=company, dc=com`.  
This results in `cn=SUSIE.SMITH, cn=users, dc=AUTHTEAM, dc=company, dc=com`.
- ❑ **Username:** `$(netbios.computer-domain)\$(netbios.messenger-username)`.  
This results in `AUTHTEAM\SUSIE.SMITH`.
- ❑ **Username:** `$(client.host:label(6)).$(client.host:label(5))`.  
This results in `SUSIE.SMITH`.

### *Example*

The following is an example of how to determine the user's identity by search.

#### *Assumptions:*

- ❑ The user susie.smith is logged in to a Windows client computer.
- ❑ The customer has an LDAP directory in which group information is stored. The FQDN for Susie Smith is "cn=Susie Smith, cn=Users, dc=Eng, dc=company, dc=com".

**Results:**

Under these circumstances the login username can not be explicitly mapped to the user's FQDN, so a search of the LDAP server for the user's login identity is required instead. The following values can be used:

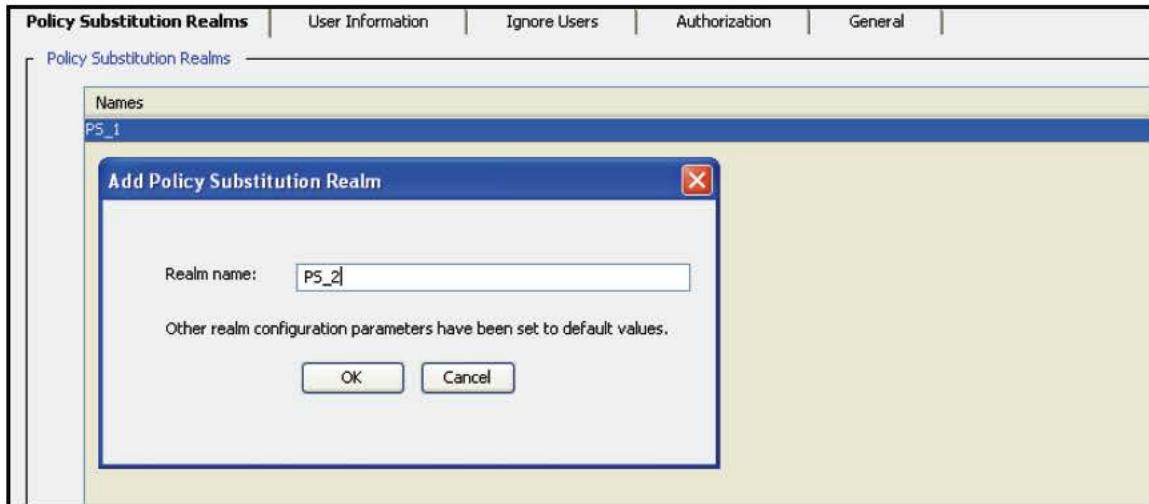
- Search filter: (sAMAccountName=\$(netbios.messenger-username:escape\_ldap\_filter))
- User attribute: default of FQDN

This results in a simple username of "Susie Smith" and a full username of "cn=Susie Smith, cn=Users, dc=Eng, dc=company, dc=com".

## Creating a Policy Substitution Realm

### To create a Policy Substitution realm:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Policy Substitution > Policy Substitution Realms.



2. Click New; the Add Policy Substitution Realm dialog displays.
3. In the **Realm name** field, enter a realm name. The name can be up to 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter.
4. Click **OK**
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

### Related CLI Syntax to Create a Policy Substitution Realm:

```
SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution create-realm realm_name
```

## Configuring User Information

### To Define Policy Substitution User Information:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Policy Substitution > User Information.

| Policy Substitution Realms                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | User Information                  | Ignore Users | Authorization | General |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|---------------|---------|
| Realm name:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <input type="text" value="PS_1"/> |              |               |         |
| <input type="radio"/> Determine username by definition<br>Username: <input type="text"/><br>Full username: <input type="text"/>                                                                                                                      |                                   |              |               |         |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Determine username by search<br>LDAP search realm name: <input type="text" value="LDAP_1"/><br>Search filter: <input type="text"/><br>User attribute: <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FQDN |                                   |              |               |         |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the Policy Substitution realm for which you want to change realm properties.

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Policy Substitution realm (using the Policy Substitution Realms tab) before attempting to set Policy Substitution realm properties. If the message **Realms must be added in the Policy Substitutions Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Policy Substitution realms defined.

3. Choose whether to determine username by definition or to determine username by search.
  - To determine username by definition: Select the **Determine username by definition** checkbox and specify the username and full username strings. Remember that the **Username** and **Full username** attributes are character strings that contain policy substitutions. When authentication is required for the transaction, these character strings are processed by the policy substitution mechanism, using the current transaction as input. The resulting string becomes the user's identity for the current transaction. For an overview of usernames and full usernames, see "How Policy Substitution Realms Work" on page 131.
  - To determine username by search, select the **Determine username by search** checkbox:
    - From the drop-down list, select the LDAP realm to use as a search realm.
    - The search filter must be a valid LDAP search filter per RFC 2254. The search filter can contain any of the policy substitutions that are available based on the user's request (such as IP address, netbios query result, and ident query result).
    - The user attribute is the attribute on the LDAP search result that corresponds to the user's full username. The LDAP search usually results in user entries being returned, in which case the user attribute is the FQDN. If the LDAP search was for a non-user object, however, the username might be a different attribute on the search result entry.
4. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

*Related CLI Syntax to Define Policy Substitution User Information*

```
SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution edit-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name)

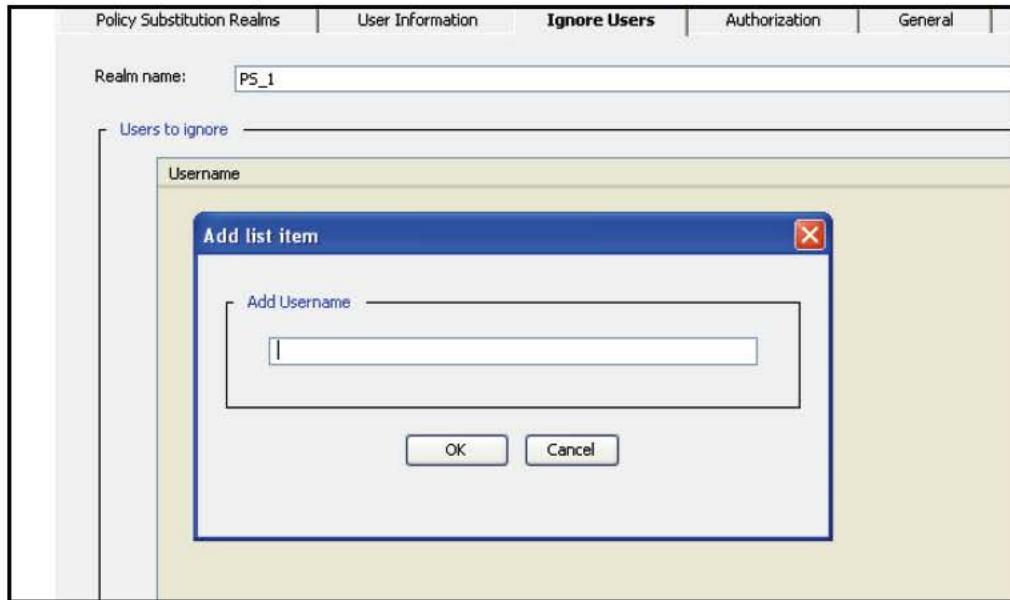
 To search by definition:
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification determine-
usernames by-definition
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification username
construction_rule
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification full-
username construction_rule

 To determine users by search:
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification determine-
usernames by-search
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification realm-name
LDAP_realm
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification search-
filter search_filter
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification user-
attribute {fqdn | LDAP_attribute_name}
```

## Creating a List of Users to Ignore

The Ignore Users tab is used to create a list of users to be ignored during an LDAP username search (see “Configuring User Information” on page 134).

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Policy Substitution > Ignore Users.



2. From the **Realm Name** drop-down list, select the Policy Substitution realm for which you want to change realm properties.

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Policy Substitution realm (using the Policy Substitution Realms tab) before attempting to set Policy Substitution realm properties. If the message Realms must be added in the Policy Substitutions Realms tab before editing this tab is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Policy Substitution realms defined.

3. Click **New** to add a username to be ignored during the username search. The username format depends on what the LDAP search is looking for but will most often be an LDAP FQDN.
4. Click **OK**; repeat the previous step to add other users.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

*Related CLI Syntax to Create a List of Users to Ignore*

- Enter the following commands:

```
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification determine-
 usernames by-search
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification ignore-
 user-list {add username| clear | remove username}
```

where add allows you to add a user to the list, clear removes all users from the list, and remove deletes one user from the list.

## Configuring Authorization

Policy Substitution realms do not require an authorization realm. If the policy does not make any decisions based on groups, you need not specify an authorization realm.

**To configure an authorization realm:**

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Policy Substitution > Authorization.

| Policy Substitution Realms                                    | User Information | Ignore Users | <b>Authorization</b> | General |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|----------------------|---------|
| Realm name: <input type="text" value="PS_1"/>                 |                  |              |                      |         |
| Authorization realm name: <input type="text" value="LDAP_1"/> |                  |              |                      |         |
|                                                               |                  |              |                      |         |

2. From the **Realm Name** drop-down list, select the Policy Substitution realm for which you want to change realm properties.

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Policy Substitution realm (using the Policy Substitution Realms tab) before attempting to set Policy Substitution realm properties. If the message Realms must be added in the Policy Substitutions Realms tab before editing this tab is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Policy Substitution realms defined.

3. From the **Authorization Realm Name** drop-down list, select the authorization realm you want to use to authorize users.
4. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

*Related CLI Syntax to Configure an Authorization Realm*

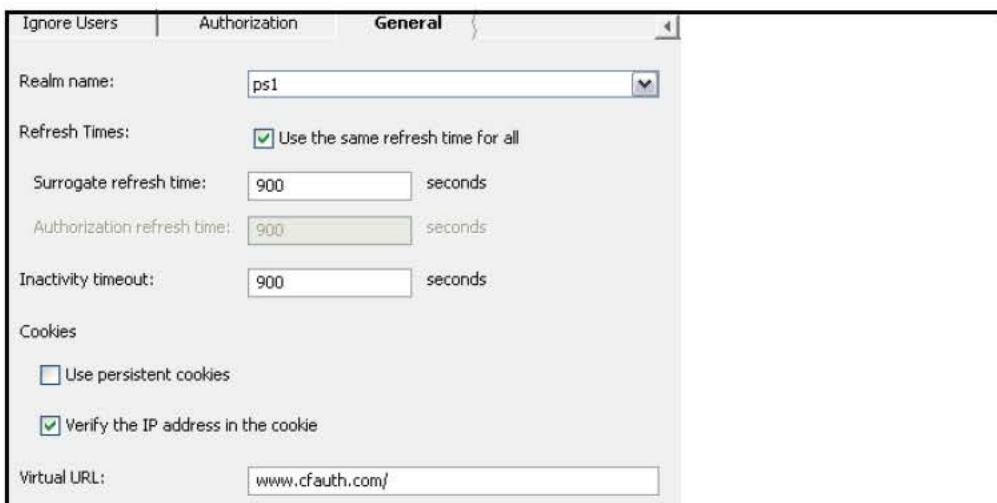
```
SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution edit-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) authorization-realm-name
authorization_realm_name
```

## Defining Policy Substitution Realm General Properties

The Policy Substitution General tab allows you to specify the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL.

### To configure Policy Substitution realm general settings

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Policy Substitution > General.



2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the Policy Substitution realm for which to change properties.

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Policy Substitution realm (using the Policy Substitution Realms tab) before attempting to set Policy Substitution general properties. If the message **Realms must be added** in the Policy Substitution Realms tab before editing this tab is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Policy Substitution realms defined.

3. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
4. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will reevaluate the user's credentials.

5. Enter the number of seconds in the **Authorization refresh time** field. The Authorization Refresh Time allows you to manage how often the authorization data is verified with the authentication realm. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.
6. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
7. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
8. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
9. You can specify a virtual URL. For more information on the virtual URL, see [“Understanding Origin-Style Redirection”](#) on page 34.
10. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

#### *Related CLI Syntax to Configure Policy Substitution Realm General Settings*

Enter the following commands to modify Policy Substitution realm properties:

```
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) inactivity-timeout
seconds
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-
refresh seconds
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) refresh-time
authorization-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) cookie {persistent
{enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}}
SGOS#(config policy-substitution realm_name) virtual-url url
```

## Notes

- Following are examples of how to configure four different types of Policy Substitution realms. For a list of available substitutions, see *Volume 8: Access Logging*.

- Identity to be determined by sending a NetBIOS over TCP/IP query to the client computer, and using LDAP authorization

```
SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution create-realm netbios
SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution edit-realm netbios
SGOS#(config policy-substitution netbios) username \
$(netbios.messenger-username)
SGOS#(config policy-substitution netbios) full-username \
cn=$(netbios.messenger-username),cn=users,dc=company,dc=com
SGOS#(config policy-substitution netbios) authorization-realm-name
ldap
```

- Identity to be determined by reverse DNS, using local authorization. Blue Coat assumes login scripts on the client computer update the DNS record for the client.

```

SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution create-realm RDNS
SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution edit-realm RDNS
SGOS#(config policy-substitution RDNS) username \
$(client.host:label(5)).$(client.host:label(6))
#SGOS#(config policy-substitution RDNS) full-username \
$(client.host:label(5)).$(client.host:label(6))
SGOS#(config policy-substitution RDNS) authorization-realm-name
local

```

- Identity to be determined by a header in the request, using LDAP authorization.
 

```

SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution create-realm header
SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution edit-realm header
SGOS#(config policy-substitution header) username \
$(request.x_header.username)
SGOS#(config policy-substitution header) full-username \
cn=$(request.x_header.username),cn=users,dc=company,dc=com
SGOS#(config policy-substitution header) username \ authorization-
realm-name ldap

```
- Identity to be determined by sending an Ident query to the client computer
 

```

SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution create-realm ident
SGOS#(config) security policy-substitution edit-realm ident
SGOS#(config policy-substitution ident) username $(ident.username)
SGOS#(config policy-substitution ident) full-username
"cn=$(ident.username),cn=Users,dc=company,dc=com"

```

- If you need to change the NetBIOS defaults of 5 seconds and 3 retries, use the nbstat requester option from the netbios command submode. (For more information on using the NetBIOS commands, refer to *Volume 11: Blue Coat SG Appliance Command Line Reference*.)
- If you need to change the Ident defaults of 30 second timeout, treating whitespace as significant and querying Ident port 113, use the client commands in the identd command submode. (For more information on using the Ident commands, refer to *Volume 11: Blue Coat SG Appliance Command Line Reference*.)

## Creating the Policy Substitution Policy

When you complete Policy Substitution realm configuration, you must create CPL policies for the policy-substitution realm to be used. Be aware that the example below is just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate.

Note that, for policy substitution realms, the username and group values are case-sensitive.

---

**Note:** Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file <Proxy> and other layers.

---

Be aware that the default policy condition for this example is *allow*. On new SGOS 5.x systems, the default policy condition is *deny*.

- Every Policy Substitution realm authenticated user is allowed to access the SG appliance.

```

<Proxy>
 authenticate(PolicySubstitutionRealm)

```

## Using Single Sign-On Realms and Proxy Chains

Some Application Delivery Network (ADN) configurations mask the source IP address of the request. For example, if the path for a request is:

**client workstation > branch proxy > data center proxy > gateway proxy**

policy running on the gateway might see the IP address of the data center proxy rather than the IP address of the client workstation.

---

**Note:** The source IP address is not masked if you use the **reflect client ip** attribute.

---

In this ADN configuration, policy needs to be configured so that Windows SSO, Novell SSO, and policy substitution realms can authenticate users correctly.

Use the `user.login.address` and `authenticate.credentials.address` policy gestures to override the IP address of the credentials used for authentication and match the IP address of the authenticated user.

---

**Note:** The `user.login.address` condition only works correctly if you use the `authenticate.credentials.address` property to set the address.

---

You can also use the `x-cs-user-login-address` substitution to log this event.

### Examples

In the following example, the address to use for authenticating with **myrealm** is set to the address received from the HTTP Client-IP header.

```
<proxy>
 authenticate(myrealm) \
 authenticate.credentials.address(${request.header.Client-IP})
```

In the following example, the user is authenticated if logged in from the 1.2.3.0/24 subnet.

```
<proxy>
 user.login.address=1.2.3.0/24 allow
```



## Chapter 12: CA eTrust SiteMinder Authentication

The SG appliance can be configured to consult a SiteMinder policy server for authentication and session management decisions. This requires that a SiteMinder realm be configured on the SG appliance and policy written to use that realm for authentication.

Access to the SiteMinder policy server is done through the Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA), which must be installed on a Windows 2000 system or higher with access to the SiteMinder policy servers.

### Understanding SiteMinder Interaction with Blue Coat

Within the SiteMinder system, BCAA acts as a custom Web agent. It communicates with the SiteMinder policy server to authenticate the user and to obtain a SiteMinder session token, response attribute information, and group membership information.

Custom header and cookie response attributes associated with **OnAuthAccept** and **OnAccessAccept** attributes are obtained from the policy server and forwarded to the SG appliance. They can (as an option) be included in requests forwarded by the *appliance*.

Within the SG system, BCAA acts as its agent to communicate with the SiteMinder server. The SG appliance provides the user information to be validated to BCAA, and receives the session token and other information from BCAA.

Each SG SiteMinder realm used causes the creation of a BCAA process on the Windows host computer running BCAA. A single host computer can support multiple SG realms (from the same or different SG appliances); the number depends on the capacity of the BCAA host computer and the amount of activity in the realms.

---

**Note:** Each (active) SiteMinder realm on the SG appliance should reference a different agent on the Policy Server.

---

Configuration of the SG's realm must be coordinated with configuration of the SiteMinder policy server. Each must be configured to be aware of the other. In addition, certain SiteMinder responses must be configured so that BCAA gets the information the SG appliance needs.

### Configuring the SiteMinder Policy Server

---

**Note:** Blue Coat assumes you are familiar with configuration of SiteMinder policy servers and Web agents.

---

Since BCAA is a Web agent in the SiteMinder system, it must be configured on the SiteMinder policy server. Configuration of BCAA on the host computer is not required; the agent obtains its configuration information from the SG appliance.

A suitable Web agent must be created and configured on the SiteMinder server. This must be configured to support 5.x agents, and a shared secret must be chosen and entered on the server (it must also be entered in the SG SiteMinder realm configuration).

SiteMinder protects resources identified by URLs. An SG realm is associated with a single protected resource. This could be an already existing resource on a SiteMinder server, (typical for a reverse proxy arrangement) or it could be a resource created specifically to protect access to SG services (typical for a forward proxy).

---

**Important:** The request URL is not sent to the SiteMinder policy server as the requested resource; the requested resource is the entire SG realm. Access control of individual URLs is done on the SG appliance using CPL or VPM.

---

The SiteMinder realm that controls the protected resource must be configured with a compatible authentication scheme. The supported schemes are Basic (in plain text and over SSL), Forms (in plain text and over SSL), and X.509 certificates. Configure the SiteMinder realm with one of these authentication schemes.

---

**Note:** Only the following X.509 Certificates are supported: X.509 Client Cert Template, X.509 Client Cert and Basic Template, and X.509 Client Cert and Form Template.

---

The SG appliance requires information about the authenticated user to be returned as a SiteMinder response. The responses should be sent by an `OnAuthAccept` rule used in the policy that controls the protected resource.

The responses must include the following:

- A Web-Agent-HTTP-Header-variable named `BCSI_USERNAME`. It must be a user attribute; the value of the response must be the simple username of the authenticated user. For example, with an LDAP directory this might be the value of the `cn` attribute or the `uid` attribute.
- A Web-Agent-HTTP-Header-variable named `BCSI_GROUPS`. It must be a user attribute and the value of the response must be `SM_USERGROUPS`.

If the policy server returns an LDAP FQDN as part of the authentication response, the SG appliance uses that LDAP FQDN as the FQDN of the user.

Once the SiteMinder agent object, configuration, realm, rules, responses and policy have been defined, the SG appliance can be configured.

## *Additional SiteMinder Configuration Notes*

---

**Note:** Additional configuration might be needed on the SiteMinder server depending on specific features being used.

---

- If using single-sign on (SSO) with off-box redirection (such as to a forms login page), the forms page must be processed by a 5.x or later Web Agent, and that agent must be configured with `fcccompatmode=no`. This precludes that agent from doing SSO with 5.x agents.
- For SSO to work with other Web agents, the other agents must have the `AcceptTPCookie=YES` as part of their configuration. This is described in the SiteMinder documentation.
- Blue Coat does not extract the issuerDN from X.509 certificates in the same way as the SiteMinder agent. Thus, a separate certificate mapping might be needed for the SGOS agent and the SiteMinder agents.

For example, the following was added to the SiteMinder policy server certificate mappings:

CN=Waterloo Authentication and Security Team,OU=Waterloo R&D, O=Blue Coat\, Inc., L=Waterloo, ST=ON, C=CA

- In order to use off-box redirection (such as an SSO realm), all agents involved must have the setting `EncryptAgentName=no` in their configurations.
- The SG appliance's credential cache only caches the user's authentication information for the smaller of the time-to-live (TTL) configured on the SG appliance and the session TTL configured on the SiteMinder policy server.

## Configuring the SG Realm

The SG realm must be configured so that it can:

- Find the Blue Coat agent(s) that acts on its behalf (hostname or IP address, port, SSL options, and the like).
- Provide BCAAA with the information necessary to allow it to identify itself as a Web agent (agent name, shared secret).
- Provide BCAAA with the information that allows it to find the SiteMinder policy server (IP address, ports, connection information.)
- Provide BCAAA with the information that it needs to do authentication and collect authorization information (protected resource name), and general options (server fail-over and off-box redirection)

For more information on configuring the SG SiteMinder realm, see “[Creating a SiteMinder Realm](#)” on page 146.

---

**Note:** All SG appliance and agent configuration is done on the appliance. The appliance sends the necessary information to BCAAA when it establishes communication.

---

## Participating in a Single Sign-On (SSO) Scheme

The SG appliance can participate in SSO with other systems that use the same SiteMinder policy server. Users must supply their authentication credentials only once to any of the systems participating. Participating in SSO is not a requirement, the SG appliance can use the SiteMinder realm as an ordinary realm.

When using SSO with SiteMinder, the SSO token is carried in a cookie (`SMSESSION`). This cookie is set in the browser by the first system that authenticates the user; other systems obtain authentication information from the cookie and so do not have to challenge the user for credentials. The SG appliance sets the `SMSESSION` cookie if it is the first system to authenticate a user, and authenticates the user based on the cookie if the cookie is present.

Since the SSO information is carried in a cookie, all the servers participating must be in the same cookie domain, including the SG appliance. This imposes restrictions on the `authenticate.mode()` used on the SG appliance.

- A reverse proxy can use any `origin` mode.
- A forward proxy must use one of the `origin-redirect` modes (such as `origin-cookie-redirect`). When using `origin-*-redirect` modes, the virtual URL hostname must be in the same cookie domain as the other systems. It cannot be an IP address and the default `www.cfauth.com` does not work either.

When using `origin-*-redirect`, the SSO cookie is automatically set in an appropriate response after the SG appliance authenticates the user. When using `origin` mode (in a reverse proxy), setting this cookie must be explicitly specified by the administrator. The policy substitution variable `$(x-agent-sso-cookie)` expands to the appropriate value of the `set-cookie` header.

## Avoiding SG Appliance Challenges

In some SiteMinder deployments all credential challenges are issued by a central authentication service (typically a Web server that challenges through a form). Protected services do not challenge and process request credentials; instead, they work entirely with the SSO token. If the request does not include an SSO token, or the SSO token is not acceptable, the request is redirected to the central service, where authentication occurs. Once authentication is complete, the request is redirected to the original resource with a response that sets the SSO token.

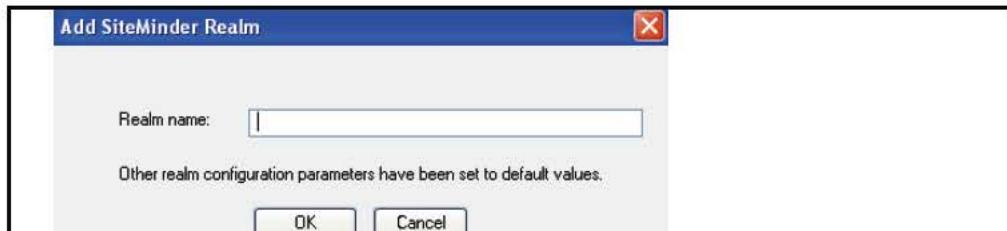
If the SiteMinder policy server is configured to use a forms-based authentication scheme, the above happens automatically. However, in this case, the SG realm can be configured to redirect to an off-box authentication service always. The URL of the service is configured in the scheme definition on the SiteMinder policy server. The SG realm is then configured with `always-redirect-offbox` enabled.

The SG appliance must not attempt to authenticate a request for the off-box authentication URL. If necessary, `authenticate(no)` can be used in policy to prevent this.

## Creating a SiteMinder Realm

**To create a SiteMinder realm:**

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > CA eTrust SiteMinder > SiteMinder Realms**.
2. Click **New**.



3. In the **Realm name** field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter. The name should be meaningful to you, but it does not have to be the name of the SiteMinder policy server.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Configuring Agents

You must configure the SiteMinder realm so that it can find the Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA).

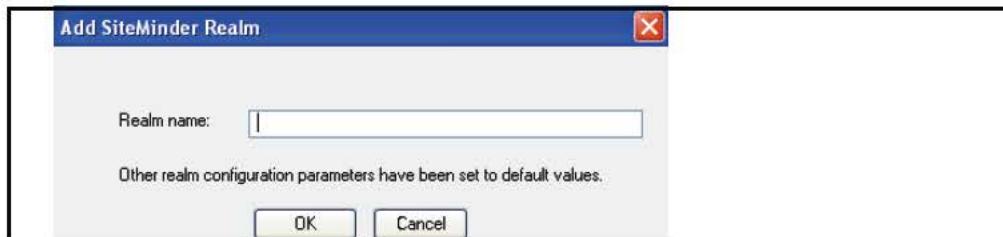
1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > CA eTrust SiteMinder > Agents**.

2. Select the realm name to edit from the drop-down list.
3. In the Primary agent section, enter the hostname or IP address where the agent resides.
4. Change the port from the default of 16101 if necessary.
5. Enter the agent name in the **Agent name** field. The agent name is the name as configured on the SiteMinder policy server.
6. You must create a secret for the Agent that matches the secret created on the SiteMinder policy server. Click **Change Secret**. SiteMinder secrets can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.
7. (Optional) Enter an alternate agent host and agent name in the **Alternate agent** section.
8. (Optional) Click **Enable SSL** to enable SSL between the SG appliance and the BCAAA.
9. (Optional) By default, if SSL is enabled, the SiteMinder BCAAA certificate is verified. To not verify the agent certificate, disable this setting.
10. In the **Timeout Request** field, type the number of seconds the SG appliance allows for each request attempt before timing out. (The default request timeout is **60** seconds.)
11. If you want group comparisons for SiteMinder groups to be case sensitive, select **Case sensitive**.

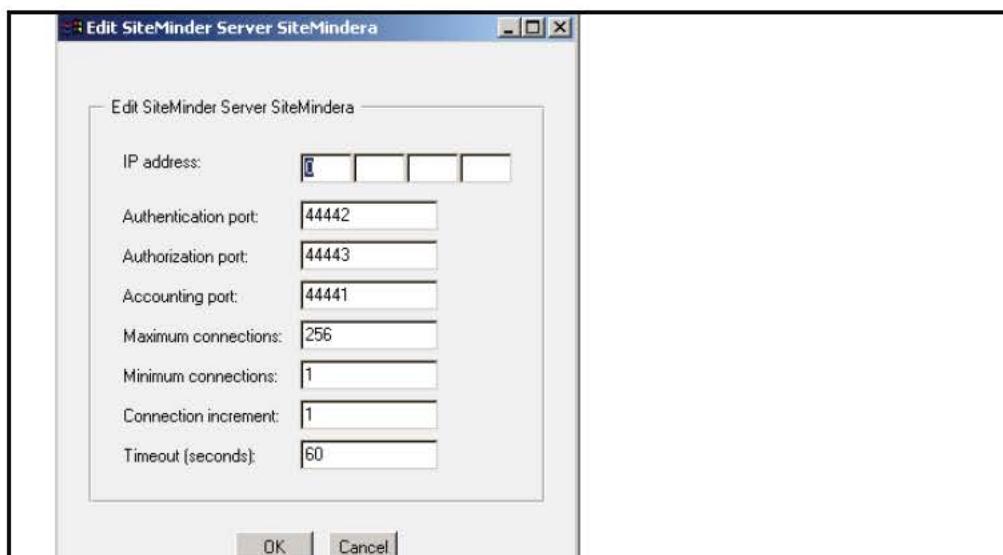
## Configuring SiteMinder Servers

Once you create a SiteMinder realm, use the SiteMinder Servers page to create and edit the list of SiteMinder policy servers consulted by the realm.

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > CA eTrust SiteMinder > SiteMinder Servers**.
2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the SiteMinder realm for which you want to add servers or change server properties.
3. To create a new SiteMinder policy server, click **New**.



4. Enter the name of the server in the dialog. This name is used only to identify the server in the SG appliance's configuration; it usually is the real hostname of the SiteMinder policy server.
5. Click **OK**.
6. To edit an existing SiteMinder policy server, click **Edit**.



- a. Enter the IP address of the SiteMinder policy server in the **IP address** field.
- b. Enter the correct port number for the **Authentication**, **Authorization**, and **Accounting** ports. The ports should be the same as the ports configured on their SiteMinder policy server. The valid port range is 1-65535.
- c. The maximum number of connections is 32768; the default is **256**.
- d. The connection increment specifies how many connections to open at a time if more are needed and the maximum is not exceeded. The default is **1**.
- e. The timeout value has a default of **60** seconds, which can be changed.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Defining SiteMinder Server General Properties

The **SiteMinder Server General** tab allows you to specify the protected resource name, the server mode, and whether requests should always be redirected off box.

### To configure general settings:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > CA eTrust SiteMinder > SiteMinder Server General**.



2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the SiteMinder realm for which you want to change properties.
3. Enter the protected resource name. The protected resource name is the same as the resource name on the SiteMinder policy server that has rules and policy defined for it.
4. In the **Server mode** drop-down list, select either **failover** or **round-robin**. Failover mode falls back to one of the other servers if the primary one is down. Round-robin modes specifies that all of the servers should be used together in a round-robin approach. Failover is the default.

**Note:** The server mode describes the way the agent (BCAAA) interacts with the SiteMinder policy server, not the way that SG appliance interacts with BCAA.

5. To force authentication challenges to always be redirected to an off-box URL, select **Always redirect off-box**.

**Note:** All SiteMinder Web agents involved must have the setting `EncryptAgentName=no` in their configurations to go off-box for any reason.

If using SiteMinder forms for authentication, the SG appliance always redirects the browser to the forms URL for authentication. You can force this behavior for other SiteMinder schemes by configuring the **always redirect off-box** property on the realm.

6. If your Web applications need information from the SiteMinder policy server responses, you can select **Add Header Responses**. Responses from the policy server obtained during authentication are added to each request forwarded by the SG appliance. Header responses replace any existing header of the same name; if no such header exists, the header is added. Cookie responses replace a cookie header with the same cookie name; if no such cookie header exists, one is added.
7. To enable validation of the client IP address, select **Validate client IP address**. If the client IP address in the SSO cookie can be valid yet different from the current request client IP address, due to downstream proxies or other devices, deselect **Validate client IP address** for the realm. SiteMinder agents participating in SSO with the SG appliance should also be modified; set the `TransientIPCheck` variable to **yes** to enable IP address validation and **no** to disable it.
8. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Configuring General Settings for SiteMinder

The SiteMinder General tab allows you to specify a display name, the refresh times, a inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL.

### To configure general settings for SiteMinder:

- Select Authentication > CA eTrust SiteMinder > SiteMinder General.

|                                                                         |                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Realm name:                                                             | SM1                                                                   |
| Display name:                                                           | SM1                                                                   |
| Refresh Times:                                                          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all |
| Credential refresh time:                                                | 900 seconds                                                           |
| Surrogate refresh time:                                                 | 900 seconds                                                           |
| Inactivity timeout:                                                     | 900 seconds                                                           |
| Rejected credentials time:                                              | 1 seconds                                                             |
| <b>Cookies</b>                                                          |                                                                       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies                         |                                                                       |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie |                                                                       |
| Virtual URL:                                                            | www.cauth.com/                                                        |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Challenge user after logout         |                                                                       |

- From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the SiteMinder realm for which you want to change properties.
- If needed, change the SiteMinder realm display name. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be greater than 128 characters and it cannot be null.
- Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
- Enter the number of seconds in the **Credential refresh time** field. The Credential Refresh Time is the amount of time Basic credentials (username and password) are kept on the SG appliance. This feature allows the SG appliance to reduce the load on the authentication server and enables credential spoofing. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will authenticate the user supplied credentials against the cached credentials. If the credentials received do not match the cached credentials, they are forwarded to the authentication server in case the user password changed. After the refresh time expires, the credentials are forwarded to the authentication server for verification.

- Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will verify the user's credentials. Depending upon the authentication mode and the user-agent, this may result in challenging the end user for credentials.

The main goal of this feature is to verify that the user-agent still has the appropriate credentials.

7. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
8. If you use Basic credentials and want to cache failed authentication attempts (to reduce the load on the authentication service), enter the number of seconds in the **Rejected Credentials time** field. This setting, enabled by default and set to one second, allows failed authentication attempts to be automatically rejected for up to 10 seconds. Any Basic credentials that match a failed result before its cache time expires are rejected without consulting the back-end authentication service. The original failed authentication result is returned for the new request.

All failed authentication attempts can be cached: Bad password, expired account, disabled account, old password, server down.

To disable caching for failed authentication attempts, set the **Rejected Credentials time** field to 0.

9. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
10. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
11. Specify the virtual URL to redirect the user to when they need to be challenged by the SG appliance. If the appliance is participating in SSO, the virtual hostname must be in the same cookie domain as the other servers participating in the SSO. It cannot be an IP address or the default, www.cfauth.com.
12. Select the **Challenge user after logout** check box if the realm requires the users to enter their credentials after they have logged out.
13. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

#### *Related CLI Syntax to Configure a SiteMinder Realm*

- ❑ To enter configuration mode:

```
SGOS#(config) security siteminder create-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config) security siteminder edit-realm realm_name
```

- ❑ The following subcommands are available:

```
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) add-header-responses {enable |
disable}
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent agent-name
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent encrypted-secret
encrypted-shared-secret
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent host
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent port
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent shared-secret
secret
```

```
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent always-redirect-
offbox
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) always-redirect-offbox {enable |
disable}
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) cache-duration seconds
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) case-sensitive {enable | disable}
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) display-name display_name
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) exit
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) no alternate-agent
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent agent-name
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent encrypted-secret
encrypted-shared-secret
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent host
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent port
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent shared-secret secret
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent always-redirect-
offbox
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) protected-resource-name resource-
name
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) rename new_realm_name
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) server-mode {failover | round-
robin}
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) validate-client-ip {enable |
disable}
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) siteminder-server create
server_name
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) siteminder-server delete
server_name
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) siteminder-server edit server_name
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) accounting-port
port_number
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) authentication-port
port_number
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) authorization-port
port_number
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) connection-
increment number
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) exit
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) ip-address
ip_address
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) max-connections
number
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) min-connections
number
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) timeout seconds
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) view
```

```
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) ssl enable
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) ssl-verify-agent enable
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) sso-type {query-client | query-
dc | query-dc-client}
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) refresh-time credential-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) refresh-time rejected-
credentials-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable |
disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}}}
SGOS#(config siteminder realm_name) virtual-url url
```

## Creating the CPL

You can create CPL policies now that you have completed SiteMinder realm configuration. Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate for your purposes.

The examples below assume the default policy condition is *allow*. On new SGOS 5.x systems, the default policy condition is *deny*.

---

**Note:** Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file <Proxy> and other layers.

---

- Every SiteMinder-authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance.  
<Proxy>  
    authenticate(SiteMinderRealm)
- Group membership is the determining factor in granting access to the SG appliance.  
<Proxy>  
    authenticate(LDAPRealm)  
<Proxy>  
    group="cn=proxyusers, ou=groups, o=myco"  
    deny



## **Chapter 13: RADIUS Realm Authentication and Authorization**

RADIUS is often the protocol of choice for ISPs or enterprises with very large numbers of users. RADIUS is designed to handle these large numbers through centralized user administration that eases the repetitive tasks of adding and deleting users and their authentication information. RADIUS also inherently provides some protection against sniffing.

Some RADIUS servers support one-time passwords. One-time passwords are passwords that become invalid as soon as they are used. The passwords are often generated by a token or program, although pre-printed lists are also used. Using one-time passwords ensures that the password cannot be used in a replay attack.

The SG appliance's one-time password support works with products such as Secure Computing SafeWord synchronous and asynchronous tokens and RSA SecurID tokens.

The SG appliance supports RADIUS servers that use challenge/response as part of the authentication process. SafeWord asynchronous tokens use challenge/response to provide authentication. SecurID tokens use challenge/response to initialize or change PINs.

---

**Note:** For this release, HTTP is the only supported protocol.

---

The challenge is displayed as the realm information in the authentication dialog; Blue Coat recommends that you use form authentication if you create a challenge/response realm, particularly if you use SecurID tokens.

If you set an authentication mode that uses forms, the system detects what type of question is being asked. If it is a yes/no question, it displays the query form with a *yes* and *no* button. If it is a new PIN question, the system displays a form with entry fields for the new PIN.

For information on using form authentication, see [Chapter 7: "Forms-Based Authentication"](#) on page 89.

Using policy, you can fine-tune RADIUS realms based on RADIUS attributes. If you use the Blue Coat attribute, groups are supported within a RADIUS realm.

This section discusses the following topics:

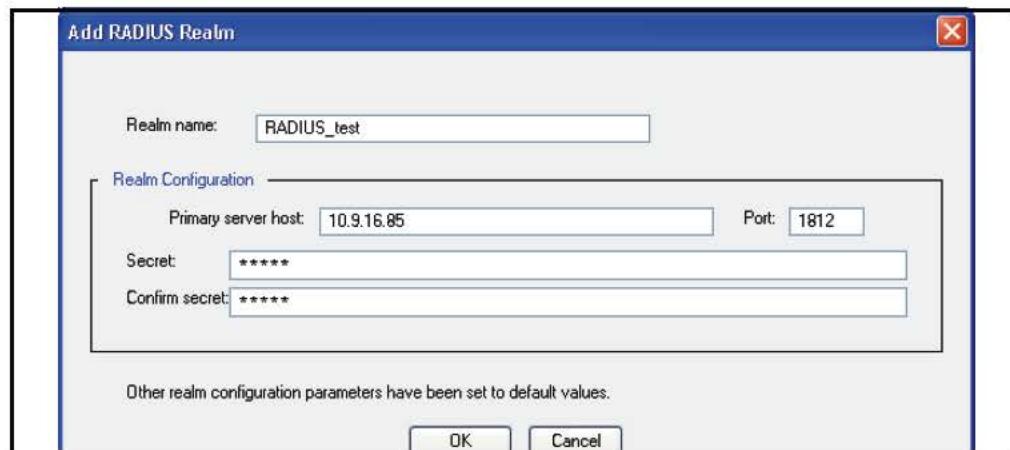
- ❑ “[Creating a RADIUS Realm](#)”
- ❑ “[Defining RADIUS Realm Properties](#)” on page 156
- ❑ “[Defining RADIUS Realm General Properties](#)” on page 158
- ❑ “[Creating the Policy](#)” on page 160
- ❑ “[Troubleshooting](#)” on page 162

## Creating a RADIUS Realm

### To create a RADIUS realm:

You can create up to 40 RADIUS realms.

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > RADIUS > RADIUS Realms**.
2. Click **New**.



3. In the **Realm name** field, enter a realm name.  
The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter.
4. Specify the host and port for the primary RADIUS server.  
The default port is **1812**.
5. Specify the RADIUS secret.  
RADIUS secrets can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.
6. Confirm the secret.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Defining RADIUS Realm Properties

Once you have created the RADIUS realm, you can change the primary host, port, and secret of the RADIUS server for that realm.

### To re-define RADIUS server properties:

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > RADIUS > RADIUS Servers**.

The screenshot shows the 'RADIUS Servers' configuration interface. The 'RADIUS Servers' tab is active. A realm named 'RADIUS1' is selected. Under 'Primary Server', the host is set to '10.25.36.47'. There is a 'Change Secret' button. Under 'Alternate Server', there is a host field and a 'Change Secret' button. In the 'Send credentials to server encoded with character set:' dropdown, 'Unicode: UTF8' is selected, with other options like 'English: ASCII' and 'Arabic: ISO-8859-6' listed below. Below the dropdown, there are fields for 'Timeout request after' (set to 5) and 'seconds; retry' (set to 5). There are also checkboxes for 'One-time passwords' (unchecked) and 'Case sensitive' (checked).

- Specify the host and port for the primary RADIUS server.

The default port is **1812**. (To create or change the RADIUS secret, click **Change Secret**. RADIUS secrets can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.)

- (Optional) Specify the host and port for the alternate RADIUS server.
- In the **Send credentials to server encoded with character set** drop-down list, select the character set used for encoding credentials; the RADIUS server needs the same character set.

A character set is a Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension (MIME) charset name. Any of the standard charset names for encodings commonly supported by Web browsers can be used. The default is Unicode:UTF8.

One list of standard charset names is found here.

- In the **Timeout Request** field, enter the number of seconds the SG appliance allows for each request attempt before trying another server.

Within a timeout, multiple packets can be sent to the server, in case the network is busy and packets are lost. The default request timeout is 10 seconds.

- In the **Retry** field, enter the number of attempts you want to permit before marking a server offline.

The client maintains an average response time from the server; the retry interval is initially twice the average. If that retry packet fails, then the next packet waits twice as long again. This increases until it reaches the timeout value. The default number of retries is **10**.

- If you are using one-time passwords, select the **One-time passwords** checkbox. You must enable one-time passwords if you created a challenge/response realm.
- If the RADIUS server is configured to expect case-sensitive usernames and passwords, make sure the **Case sensitive** checkbox is selected.
- Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Defining RADIUS Realm General Properties

The RADIUS General tab allows you to specify the display name, the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL.

### To configure general settings:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > RADIUS > RADIUS General.

| RADIUS Realms                                                           | RADIUS Servers                                                        | RADIUS General |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Realm name:                                                             | RADIUS1                                                               |                |
| Display name:                                                           | RADIUS1                                                               |                |
| Refresh Times:                                                          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all |                |
| Credential refresh time:                                                | 900                                                                   | seconds        |
| Surrogate refresh time:                                                 | 900                                                                   | seconds        |
| Inactivity timeout:                                                     | 900                                                                   | seconds        |
| Rejected credentials time:                                              | 1                                                                     | seconds        |
| Cookies                                                                 |                                                                       |                |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies                         |                                                                       |                |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie |                                                                       |                |
| Virtual URL:                                                            | www.cfauth.com/                                                       |                |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Challenge user after logout         |                                                                       |                |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the RADIUS realm for which you want to change properties.
3. If needed, change the RADIUS realm display name.  
The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be greater than 128 characters and it cannot be empty.
4. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
5. Enter the number of seconds in the **Credential refresh time** field.

The Credential Refresh Time is the amount of time basic credentials (username and password) are kept on the SG appliance. This feature allows the SG appliance to reduce the load on the authentication server and enables credential spoofing. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will authenticate the user supplied credentials against the cached credentials. If the credentials received do not match the cached credentials, they are forwarded to the authentication server in case the user password changed. After the refresh time expires, the credentials are forwarded to the authentication server for verification.

6. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field.

The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will verify the user's credentials.

Depending upon the authentication mode and the user-agent, this may result in challenging the end user for credentials.

The main goal of this feature is to verify that the user-agent still has the appropriate credentials.

7. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
8. If you use Basic credentials and want to cache failed authentication attempts (to reduce the load on the authentication service), enter the number of seconds in the **Rejected Credentials time** field.

This setting, enabled by default and set to one second, allows failed authentication attempts to be automatically rejected for up to 10 seconds. Any Basic credentials that match a failed result before its cache time expires are rejected without consulting the back-end authentication service. The original failed authentication result is returned for the new request.

All failed authentication attempts can be cached: Bad password, expired account, disabled account, old password, server down.

To disable caching for failed authentication attempts, set the **Rejected Credentials time** field to 0.

9. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
10. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
11. You can specify a virtual URL. For more information on the virtual URL, see [“Understanding Origin-Style Redirection”](#) on page 34.
12. Select the **Challenge user after logout** check box if the realm requires the users to enter their credentials after they have logged out.
13. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

#### *Related CLI Syntax to Configure a RADIUS Realm*

- ❑ To enter configuration mode:  

```
SGOS#(config) security radius create-realm realm_name secret primary-server_host [primary-server_port]
-or-
SGOS#(config) security radius create-realm-encrypted realm_name encrypted_secret primary_host [primary_port]
```
- ❑ The following subcommands are available:

```

SGOS#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server encrypted-secret
encrypted_secret
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server host [port]
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server secret secret
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) case-sensitive {disable | enable}
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) display-name display_name
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) exit
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) no alternate-server
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) one-time-passwords {disable | enable}
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) primary-server encrypted-secret
encrypted_secret
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) primary-server host [port]
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) primary-server secret secret
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) timeout seconds
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) server-charset charset
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) server-retry count
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) spoof-authentication {none | origin |
proxy}
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) refresh-time credential-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) refresh-time rejected-credentials-
refresh seconds
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) refresh-time authorization-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable}
| verify-ip {enable | disable}}
SGOS#(config radius realm_name) virtual-url url

```

## Creating the Policy

Fine-tune RADIUS realms through attributes configured by policy—CPL or VPM. You can also create RADIUS groups. To fine-tune RADIUS realms, continue with the next section. To create RADIUS groups, see “[Creating RADIUS Groups](#)” on page 161.

---

**Note:** RADIUS groups can only be configured through policy. This feature is not available through either the Management Console or the CLI.

---

### Fine-Tuning RADIUS Realms

Fine-tune RADIUS Realms by using the following attributes in the attribute.<name> and has\_attribute.<name> CPL conditions and source objects in VPM.

Table 13-1. RADIUS Attributes for the attribute.<name> and has\_attribute.<name> Conditions

| RADIUS Attribute Name | CPL Gesture Name          | Type (Possible Value) |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Callback-ID           | attribute.Callback-ID     | String                |
| Callback-Number       | attribute.Callback-Number | String                |

Table 13-1. RADIUS Attributes for the attribute.&lt;name&gt; and has\_attribute.&lt;name&gt; Conditions (Continued)

| RADIUS Attribute Name   | CPL Gesture Name                  | Type (Possible Value) |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Filter-ID               | attribute.Filter-ID               | String                |
| Framed-IP-Address       | attribute.Framed-IP-Address       | IP Address            |
| Framed-IP-Netmask       | attribute.Framed-IP-Netmask       | IP Address            |
| Framed-MTU              | attribute.Framed-MTU              | Integer               |
| Framed-Pool             | attribute.Framed-Pool             | Strong                |
| Framed-Protocol         | attribute.Framed-Protocol         | Integer (1-6)         |
| Framed-Route            | attribute.Framed-Route            | String                |
| Idle-Timeout            | attribute.Idle-Timeout            | Integer               |
| Login-LAT-Group         | attribute.Login-LAT-Group         | String                |
| Login-LAT-Node          | attribute.Login-LAT-Node          | String                |
| Login-LAT-Port          | attribute.Login-LAT-Port          | Integer               |
| Login-LAT-Service       | attribute.Login-LAT-Service       | String                |
| Login-IP-Host           | attribute.Login-IP-Host           | IP Address            |
| Login-Service           | attribute.Login-Service           | Integer (0-7)         |
| Login-TCP-Port          | attribute.Login-TCP-Port          | Integer (0-65535)     |
| Port-Limit              | attribute.Port-Limit              | Integer               |
| Service-Type            | attribute.Service-Type            | Integer (1-11)        |
| Session-Timeout         | attribute.Session-Timeout         | Integer               |
| Tunnel-Assignment-ID    | attribute.Tunnel-Assignment-ID    | String                |
| Tunnel-Medium-Type      | attribute.Tunnel-Medium-Type      | Integer (1-15)        |
| Tunnel-Private-Group-ID | attribute.Tunnel-Private-Group-ID | String                |
| Tunnel-Type             | attribute.Tunnel-Type             | Integer (1-12)        |
| Blue-Coat-Group         | attribute.Blue-Coat-Group         | String                |

## Creating RADIUS Groups

You can create a RADIUS realm group by using the custom Blue Coat attribute, which can appear multiple times within a RADIUS response. It can be used to assign a user to one or more groups. Values that are found in this attribute can be used for comparison with the group condition in CPL and the group object in VPM. The group name is a string with a length from 1-247 characters. The Blue Coat Vendor ID is 14501, and the Blue-Coat-Group attribute has a Vendor Type of 1.

If you are already using the Filter-ID attribute for classifying users, you can use that attribute instead of the custom Blue-Coat-Group attribute. While the Filter-ID attribute does not work with the CPL group condition or the group object in VPM, the attribute.Filter-ID condition can be used to manage users in a similar manner.

## CPL Example

Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate.

---

**Note:** Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file layers.

---

- Every RADIUS-authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance if the RADIUS attribute service-type is set.

```
<Proxy>
 authenticate(RADIUSRealm)
<Proxy>
 allow has_attribute.Service-Type=yes
 deny
```

- A group called RegisteredUsersGroup is allowed to access the SG appliance if the allow group gesture is defined.

```
<proxy>
 authenticate(RADIUSRealm)
<proxy>
 allow group=RegisteredUsersGroup
 deny
```

## Troubleshooting

One of five conditions can cause the following error message:

**Your request could not be processed because of a configuration error: "The request timed out while trying to authenticate. The authentication server may be busy or offline."**

- The secret is wrong.
- The network is so busy that all packets were lost to the RADIUS server.
- The RADIUS server was slow enough that the SG appliance gave up before the server responded.
- The RADIUS servers are up, but the RADIUS server is not running. In this case, you might also receive ICMP messages that there is no listener.
- RADIUS servers machines are not running/unreachable. Depending on the network configuration, you might also receive ICMP messages.

## Notes

- If you use guest authentication, remember that RADIUS realms retrieve authorization data at the same time as the user is authenticated. In some cases, the system can distinguish between an authentication and authorization failure. Where the system cannot determine if the error was due to authentication or authorization, both the authentication and authorization are considered to be failed.

## *Chapter 14: Novell Single Sign-on Authentication and Authorization*

The Novell® Single Sign-on (SSO) realm is an authentication mechanism that provides single sign-on authentication for users that authenticate against a Novell eDirectory server. The mechanism uses the Novell eDirectory Network Address attribute to map the user's IP address to an LDAP FQDN. Since the mechanism is based on the user's IP address, it only works in environments where an IP address can be mapped to a unique user.

A Novell SSO realm consists of the following:

- BCAAA service information
- Novell eDirectory information
- Authorization realm information
- General realm information.

The Novell eDirectory information consists of a SG appliance LDAP realm that points to the master Novell eDirectory server that it is to be searched and monitored for user logins (see "Chapter 9: "LDAP Realm Authentication and Authorization" on page 109 for information on configuring LDAP realms) and a list of eDirectory server and port combinations that specify additional servers to monitor for logins. Additional monitor servers must be specified if they contain user information that is not replicated to the master Novell eDirectory server being searched.

After a Novell SSO realm has been configured, you can write policy that authenticates and authorizes users against the Novell SSO realm.

To ensure that users who do not successfully authenticate against the Novell SSO realm are not challenged, administrators can use a realm sequence that contains the Novell SSO realm and then a policy substitution realm to use when Novell SSO authentication fails.

---

**Note:** The Novell SSO realm works reliably only in environments where one IP address maps to one user. If an IP address cannot be mapped to a single user, authentication fails. Those with NAT systems, which uses one set of IP addresses for intranet traffic and a different set for Internet traffic, may need to use a different realm for authentication.

---

This section discusses the following topics:

- "How Novell SSO Realms Work" on page 164
- "Creating a Novell SSO Realm" on page 165
- "Novell SSO Agents" on page 165
- "Adding LDAP Servers to Search and Monitor" on page 167
- "Querying the LDAP Search Realm" on page 168
- "Configuring Authorization" on page 169
- "Defining Novell SSO Realm General Properties" on page 169

- “[Modifying the sso.ini File for Novell SSO Realms](#)” on page 171
- “[Creating the CPL](#)” on page 172
- “[Notes](#)” on page 173

## How Novell SSO Realms Work

When a user logs into the Novell network, the user entry in Novell eDirectory is updated with the login time and the IP address that the user logged in from and the login time. The SG appliance uses BCAAA to do LDAP searches and monitoring of the configured Novell eDirectory servers to obtain the user login information and maintain a user IP address to user FQDN map.

To create the initial IP/FQDN map, the BCAAA service searches the configured master eDirectory server for all user objects within the configured base DNs that have a Network Address attribute. For each user entry returned, BCAAA parses the Network Address attribute and adds the IP/FQDN entry to the map. If an existing entry exists for that IP address, it is overwritten.

A user entry can have more than one Network Address entry in which case an entry for each IP address is added to the map. Since service accounts can login using the same IP address and subsequently overwrite entries for actual users, the BCAAA service has a configurable list of the Service names to ignore. Users can be added or removed from the list in the sso.ini file. (see “[Modifying the sso.ini File for Novell SSO Realms](#)” on page 171.)

Once the initial map has been created it is kept current by monitoring all of the eDirectory servers that contain unique partition data for the eDirectory tree. By default, the search server defined by the LDAP realm is monitored. If other servers contain data that is not replicated to the search server, they must be individually monitored. When a server is being monitored, each time a user logs in or logs out, an event message is sent to BCAAA to update its mapping of FQDNs to IP addresses.

Multiple SG devices can talk to the same BCAAA service and can reference the same eDirectory servers. To avoid multiple queries to the same server, the LDAP hostname and port combination uniquely identifies an eDirectory configuration and should be shared across devices.

To ensure that BCAAA has complete map of FQDNs to IP addresses, the realm can be configured to do a full search of the configured master eDirectory server up to once per day.

The BCAAA service must be version 120 or higher and must be installed on a Windows 2000+ machine that can access the eDirectory server. The BCAAA machine does not need to have a Windows trust relationship with the eDirectory server.

---

**Note:** For information on configuring the BCAAA service, see [Appendix B: "Using the Authentication/Authorization Agent"](#) on page 215.

---

## How Novell SSO Authorization Works

A Novell SSO realm can be configured to do no authorization, authorize against itself (the default), or authorize against another valid authorization realm.

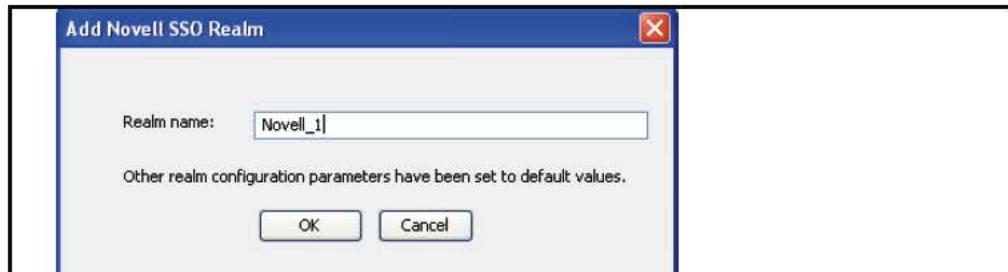
When a Novell SSO realm is configured to authorize against itself, authorization is done through the LDAP search realm specified by the Novell SSO realm. The behavior is similar to the Novell SSO realm explicitly selecting the LDAP realm as the authorization realm.

## Creating a Novell SSO Realm

The Configuration > Authentication > Novell SSO > Novell SSO Realms tab allows you to create a new Novell SSO realm. Up to 40 Novell SSO realms can be created.

### To Create a Novell SSO Realm through the Management Console

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Novell SSO > Novell SSO Realms.
2. Click **New**.



3. In the **Realm name** field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Novell SSO Agents

You must configure the Novell realm so that it can find the Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA).

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Novell SSO>Agents.

2. Select the realm name to edit from the drop-down list.

---

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Novell SSO realm (using the Novell SSO Realms tab) before attempting to configure the BCAAA agent. If the message **Realms must be added in the Novell SSO Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Novell SSO realms defined.

---

3. In the Primary agent section, enter the hostname or IP address where the BCAAA agent resides.
4. Change the port from the default of 16101 if necessary.
5. (Optional) You can change the encrypted passwords for the private key and public certificate on the BCAAA machine that are to be used for SSL communication between the BCAAA service and the Novell eDirectory server by clicking **Change Private Key Password** or **Change Public Certificate Password**. The location of the private key and public certificate are specified in the `sso.ini` file on the BCAAA machine. (For information on changing the location of the private key and public certificate, see “[Modifying the sso.ini File for Novell SSO Realms](#)” on page 171.)
6. (Optional) Enter an alternate agent host and agent name in the **Alternate agent** section. Note that you can also change the passwords for the private key and public certificate for the alternate agent, as well.

The primary and alternate BCAAA server must work together to support fail-over. If the primary BCAAA server fails, the alternate server should be able to search and monitor the same set of eDirectory servers.

7. (Optional) Click **Enable SSL** to enable SSL between the SG appliance and the BCAAA.
8. (Optional) By default, if SSL is enabled, the BCAAA service’s certificate is verified. To not verify the agent certificate, disable this setting.

---

**Note:** The **Enable SSL** setting only enables SSL between the SG appliance and BCAAA. To enable SSL between BCAAA and the eDirectory server, the **Enable SSL** setting must be set in the LDAP search realm.

---

9. In the **Timeout Request** field, type the number of seconds the SG appliance allows for each request attempt before timing out. (The default request timeout is **60** seconds.)
10. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

#### *Related CLI Syntax to Create and Define a Novell SSO Realm*

1. At the (config) prompt:

```
SGOS#(config) security novell-sso create-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config) security novell-sso edit-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) primary-agent {host hostname /
port port_number}
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) alternate-agent {host hostname /
port port_number}
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) ssl enable
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) ssl-verify-agent enable
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) sso-type {query-client | query-dc
| query-dc-client}
```

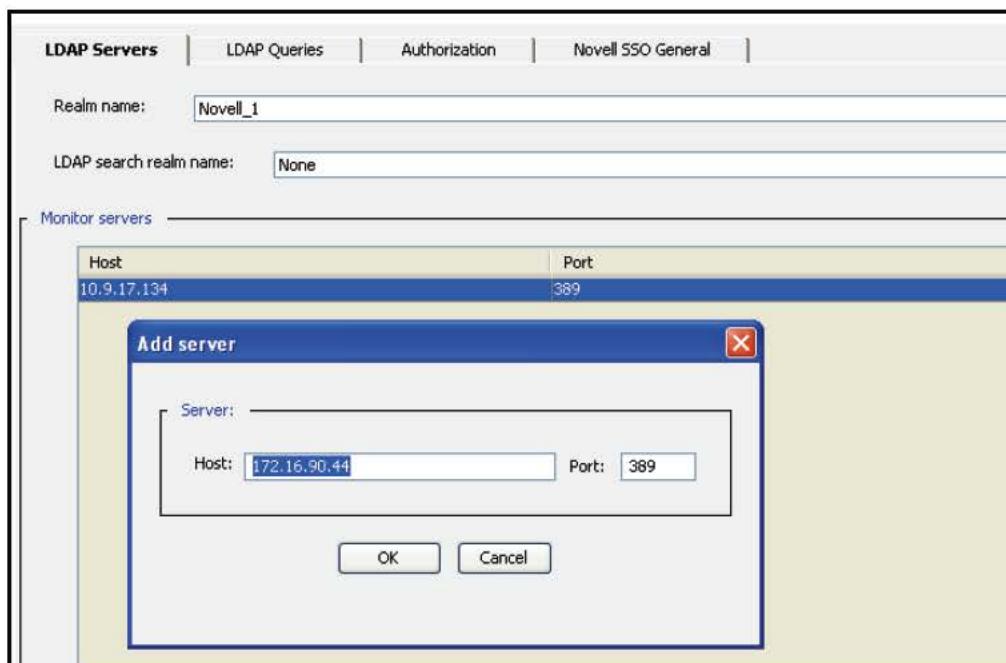
## Adding LDAP Servers to Search and Monitor

The BCAAA service searches and monitors specified eDirectory servers to determine which users are logged in and their Network Address attribute value. Those attribute values are converted into IP addresses, and BCAAA maintains a map of IP addresses to LDAP FQDNs.

If the eDirectory tree is partitioned across multiple servers, the realm must monitor every eDirectory server that has unique user information.

### To specify the eDirectory servers:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Novell SSO > LDAP Servers.



2. Select the realm name to edit from the drop-down list.

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Novell SSO realm (using the Novell SSO Realms tab) before attempting to specify LDAP server configuration. If the message **Realms must be added in the Novell SSO Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Novell SSO realms defined.

3. Select an LDAP realm from the drop-down list. The servers configured in this LDAP realm are used to do the full searches of the eDirectory tree.
4. If you have a deployment with multiple servers holding partitions that are not fully replicated to the master server, you can monitor each LDAP server individually. To add an LDAP server to monitor, click **New**.
5. Add the IP address and port of the LDAP server and click **OK**.
6. Repeat for additional LDAP servers you need to monitor.
7. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

*Related CLI Syntax to specify the LDAP search realm and LDAP servers to monitor:*

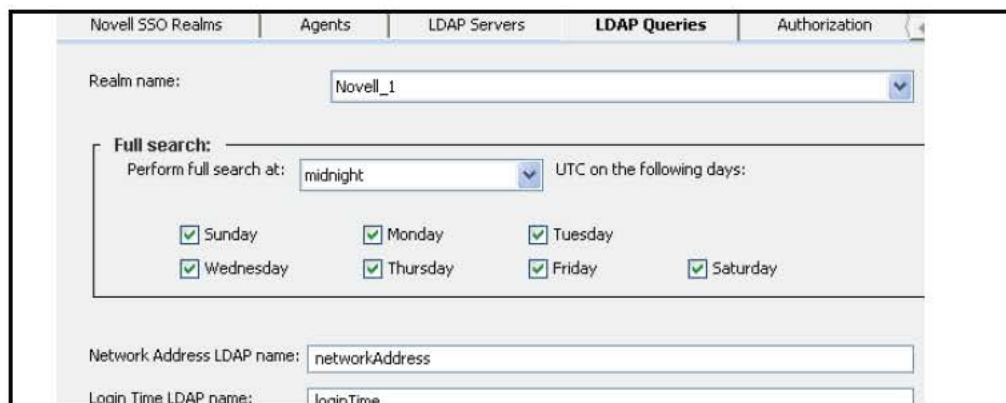
```
SGOS#(config) security novell-sso edit-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) ldap search-realm ldap_realm
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) ldap monitor-servers {add host
[port] | clear | remove host [port]}
```

## Querying the LDAP Search Realm

You can specify the time and days that a full search of the eDirectory tree is repeated in order to ensure that the mappings maintained by BCAAA are up to date.

### To specify search criteria:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Novell SSO > LDAP Queries.



2. Select the realm name to edit from the drop-down list.

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Novell SSO realm (using the Novell SSO Realms tab) before attempting to configure LDAP queries. If the message **Realms must be added in the Novell SSO Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Novell SSO realms defined.

3. In the full search pane, specify the time of day you want the search to take place from the drop-down list.
4. Select or de-select checkboxes to specify days to search.
5. If you have changed the Novell eDirectory Network Address or Login Time LDAP attribute name, you can enter those changed names in the **Network Address LDAP name** and the **Login Time LDAP name** fields. The names must match the LDAP names configured on the eDirectory server for authentication to succeed.
6. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

*Related CLI Syntax to Specify Search Criteria*

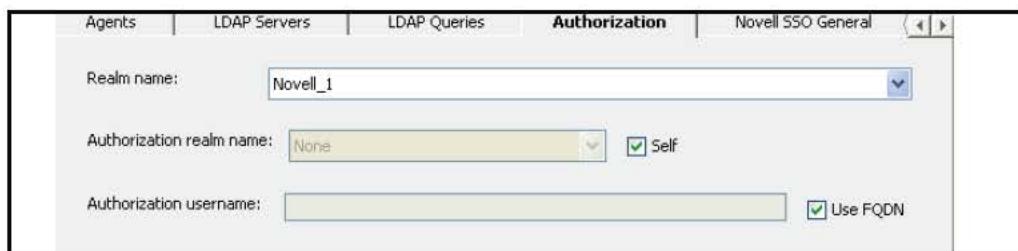
```
SGOS#(config) security novell-sso edit-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) full-search day-of-week {all |
friday | monday | no | none | saturday | sunday | thursday | tuesday |
wednesday}
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) full-search time-of-day 0-23
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) ldap-name {login-time ldap_name |
network-address ldap_name}
```

## Configuring Authorization

Novell SSO realm can be configured to do no authorization, authorize against itself (the default), or authorize against another valid authorization realm (either LDAP or Local).

### To specify an authorization realm:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Novell SSO > Authorization.



2. Select the realm name to edit from the drop-down list.

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Novell SSO realm (using the Novell SSO Realms tab) before attempting to configure authorization. If the message **Realms must be added in the Novell SSO Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Novell SSO realms defined.

3. The Novell SSO realm is selected to authorize against itself by default. To choose another realm, de-select the **Self** checkbox and choose an authorization realm from the drop-down list.
4. The LDAP FQDN is selected as the **Authorization user name**, by default. You might want to change this if the user's authorization information resides in a different root DN. To choose a different authorization name, de-select the **Use FQDN** checkbox and enter a different name, for example:  
`cn=${user.name},ou=partition,o=company`
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

#### Related CLI Syntax to Configure Authorization Settings

```
SGOS# (config novell-sso realm_name) authorization realm-name
authorization-realm-name
SGOS# (config novell-sso realm-name) authorization username
authorization-username
SGOS# (config-novell-sso realm-name) authorization self {enable |
disable}
```

## Defining Novell SSO Realm General Properties

The **Novell SSO General** tab allows you to specify the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, and cookies, and a virtual URL.

---

**Note:** Novell SSO realms default to the **origin-ip** authentication mode when no authentication mode or the auto authentication mode is specified in policy. After a user has first successfully authenticated to the SG appliance, all subsequent requests from that same IP address for the length of the surrogate refresh time are authenticated as that user. If the first user is allowed or denied access, subsequent users during that same time coming from the same IP address are allowed or denied as that first user. This is true even if policy would have treated them differently if they were authenticated as themselves.

If multiple users often log in from the same IP address, it is recommended to use a shorter surrogate refresh timeout than the default or an authentication mode that does not use IP surrogates.

---

### To configure Novell SSO general settings:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Novell SSO > Novell SSO General.

| LDAP Servers   | LDAP Queries                                                                                                                                                                               | Authorization | Novell SSO General |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Realm name:    | novell1                                                                                                                                                                                    |               |                    |
| Refresh Times: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all<br>Surrogate refresh time: 900 seconds<br>Authorization refresh time: 900 seconds<br>Inactivity timeout: 900 seconds |               |                    |
| Cookies        | <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie                                                                 |               |                    |
| Virtual URL:   | www.cauth.com/                                                                                                                                                                             |               |                    |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the Novell SSO realm for which you want to change properties.

---

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Novell SSO realm (using the Novell SSO Realms tab) before attempting to set Novell SSO general properties. If the message **Realms must be added in the Novell SSO Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Novell SSO realms defined.

---

3. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
4. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will determine which user is using the current IP address, and update the surrogate to authenticate with that user.

5. Enter the number of seconds in the **Authorization refresh time** field. The Authorization Refresh Time allows you to manage how often the authorization data is verified with the authentication realm. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.
6. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
7. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
8. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
9. You can specify a virtual URL. For more information on the virtual URL, see [“Understanding Origin-Style Redirection”](#) on page 34.
10. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

*Related CLI Syntax to Configure General Settings*

```
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) refresh-time authorization-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable |
disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}}
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) virtual-url url
```

## Modifying the sso.ini File for Novell SSO Realms

The Novell SSO realm uses the `sso.ini` file for configuration parameters required by the BCAAA service to manage communication with the Novell eDirectory server. Three sections in the `sso.ini` file are related to the Novell SSO realm: `NovellSetup`, `NovellTrustedRoot Certificates`, and `SSOServiceUsers`. You only need to modify settings in the `NovellTrustedRoot Certificates` section if the LDAP realm used by the Novell SSO realm requires that the identity of the server be verified.

The `sso.ini` file is located in the BCAAA installation directory.

---

**Note:** The changes to the `sso.ini` file have no effect until the BCAAA service is restarted.

---

### To modify Novell SSO realms parameters:

1. Open the file in a text editor.
2. In the Novell Setup section, modify the parameters as needed (the default values are as follows):
  - `MonitorRetryTime=30`

- SearchRetryTime=30
  - TrustedRootCertificateEncoding=der
  - PublicCertificateEncoding=der
  - PrivateKeyFile=
  - PrivateKeyEncoding=der
3. If the LDAP realm used by the Novell SSO realm requires that the identity of the server be verified, add the paths to the Trusted root certificate files in the NovellTrustedRootCertificates section.
  4. In the section SSOServiceUsers, list the names of users who can log in with eDirectory credentials on behalf of the service and mask the identity of the logged-on user.  
Listing these users here forces the BCAAA service to ignore them for authentication purposes.
  5. Save the `sso.ini` file.

## Creating the CPL

You can create CPL policies now that you have completed Novell SSO realm configuration. Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate for your purposes.

---

**Note:** The examples below assume the default policy condition is `allow`.

---

Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file layers.

- Every Novell SSO-authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance.  
`<Proxy>  
authenticate(NSSORealm)`
- Group membership is the determining factor in granting access to the SG appliance.  
`<Proxy>  
authenticate(NSSORealm)  
<Proxy>  
group="cn=proxyusers, ou=groups, o=myco" ALLOW  
deny`

## Using Single Sign-On Realms and Proxy Chains

Some Application Delivery Network (ADN) configurations mask the source IP address of the request. For example, if the path for a request is:

**client workstation > branch proxy > data center proxy > gateway proxy**

policy running on the gateway might see the IP address of the data center proxy rather than the IP address of the client workstation.

---

**Note:** The source IP address is not masked if you use the **reflect client ip** attribute.

---

In this ADN configuration, policy needs to be configured so that Windows SSO, Novell SSO, and policy substitution realms can authenticate users correctly.

Use the `user.login.address` and `authenticate.credentials.address` policy gestures to override the IP address of the credentials used for authentication and match the IP address of the authenticated user.

---

**Note:** The `user.login.address` condition only works correctly if you use the `authenticate.credentials.address` property to set the address.

---

You can also use the `x-cs-user-login-address` substitution to log this event.

#### *Examples*

In the following example, the address to use for authenticating with **myrealm** is set to the address received from the HTTP Client-IP header.

```
<proxy>
 authenticate(myrealm) \
 authenticate.credentials.address(${request.header.Client-IP})
```

In the following example, the user is authenticated if logged in from the 1.2.3.0/24 subnet.

```
<proxy>
 user.login.address=1.2.3.0/24 allow
```

## Notes

- The Novell SSO realm works reliably only in environments where one IP address maps to one user. NAT environments are not supported.
- Novell SSO realms are not supported in IPX environments.
- Event monitoring of eDirectory is only compatible with eDirectory 8.7+.
- Upgrade to Novell client 4.91 SP1 or later if you experience issues with the Network Address attribute not being updated during login.
- Novell SSO realms do not use user credentials so they cannot spoof authentication information to an upstream server.
- If an upstream proxy is doing Novell SSO authentication, all downstream proxies must send the client IP address.
- There can be response time issues between the BCAA service and the eDirectory servers during searches; configure the timeout for LDAP searches to allow the eDirectory server adequate time to reply.



## Chapter 15: Sequence Realm Authentication

Once a realm is configured, you can associate it with other realms to allow Blue Coat to search for the proper authentication credentials for a specific user. That is, if the credentials are not acceptable to the first realm, they are sent to the second, and so on until a match is found or all the realms are exhausted. This is called *sequencing*.

For example, if a company has one set of end-users authenticating against an LDAP server and another using NTLM, a sequence realm can specify to attempt NTLM authentication first; if that fails due to a user-correctable error (such as credentials mismatch or a user not in database) then LDAP authentication can be specified to try next. You can also use sequences to fall through to a policy substitution realm if the user did not successfully authenticate against one of the earlier realms in the sequence.

---

**Note:** Errors such as *server down* do not fall through to the next realm in the sequence. Those errors result in an exception returned to the user. Only errors that are end-user correctable result in the next realm in the sequence being attempted.

---

This section discusses the following topics:

- ❑ “[Adding Realms to a Sequence Realm](#)”
- ❑ “[Creating a Sequence Realm](#)” on page 176

### Adding Realms to a Sequence Realm

Keep in mind the following rules for using realm sequences:

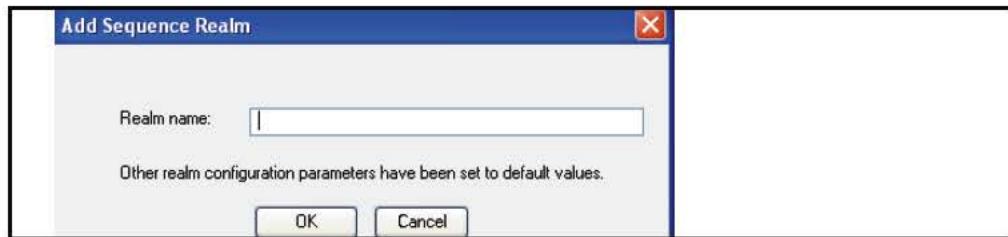
- ❑ Ensure the realms to be added to the sequence are customized to your needs. Check each realm to be sure that the current values are correct. For IWA, verify that the **Allow Basic Credentials** checkbox is set correctly.
- ❑ All realms in the realm sequence must exist and cannot be deleted or renamed while the realm sequence references them.
- ❑ Only one IWA realm is allowed in a realm sequence.
- ❑ If an IWA realm is in a realm sequence, it must be either the first or last realm in the list.
- ❑ If an IWA realm is in a realm sequence and the IWA realm does not support Basic credentials, the realm must be the first realm in the sequence and try IWA authentication once must be enabled.
- ❑ Multiple Basic realms are allowed.
- ❑ Multiple Windows SSO realms are allowed.
- ❑ Connection-based realms, such as Certificate, are not allowed in the realm sequence.
- ❑ A realm can only exist once in a particular realm sequence.
- ❑ A realm sequence cannot have another realm sequence as a member.

- If a realm is down, an exception page is returned. Authentication is not tried against the other later realms in the sequence.

## Creating a Sequence Realm

**To create a sequence realm:**

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Sequences > Sequence Realms**.
2. Click **New**.

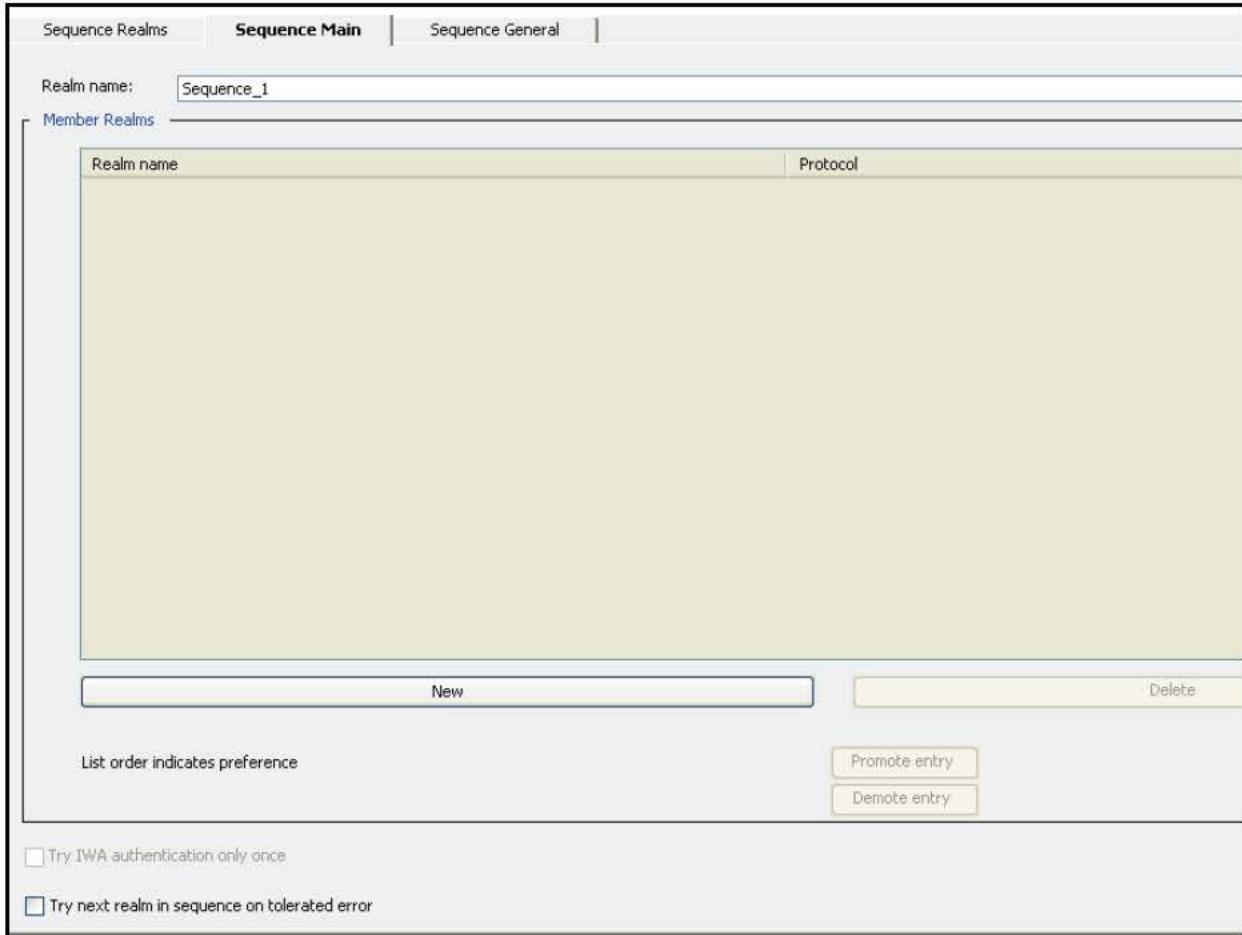


3. In the **Realm name**, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name must start with a letter.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

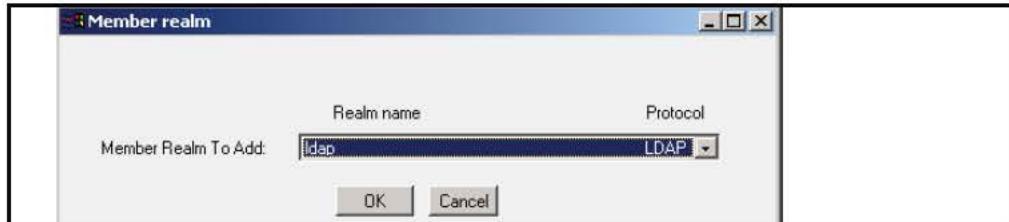
## Adding Realms to a Sequence Realm

**To add realms to a sequence realm:**

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Sequences > Sequence Main**.



2. Click **New** to add an existing realm to the realm sequence from the drop-down list. Remember that each realm can be used only once in a realm sequence.



3. From the drop-down list, select the Sequence realm you wanted added to the realm sequence.
4. Click **OK**.  
You are returned to the main Sequences menu.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.
6. Repeat from Step 2 until you have added all necessary realms.
7. To change the order that the realms are checked, use the **promote/demote** buttons. When you add an IWA realm, it is placed first in the list and you can allow the realm sequence to **try IWA authentication only once**. If you demote the IWA entry, it becomes last in the sequence and the default of checking IWA multiple times is enabled.

8. If you permit authentication or authorization errors, you can select the **Try next realm on tolerated error** checkbox to specify that the next realm on the list should be attempted if authentication in the previous realm has failed with a permitted error. The default value is to not attempt the next realm and fall out of the sequence. (For information on using permitted errors and guest authentication, see “[Permitting Users to Login with Authentication or Authorization Failures](#)” on page 37.)
9. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Defining Sequence Realm General Properties

The Sequence General tab allows you to specify the display name and a virtual URL.

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Sequences > Sequence General**.

| Sequence Realms | Sequence Main   | <b>Sequence General</b> |  |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------------|--|
| Realm name:     | Sequence_1      |                         |  |
| Display name:   | Sequence_1      |                         |  |
| Virtual URL:    | www.cfauth.com/ |                         |  |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the Sequence realm for which you want to change properties.
3. If needed, change the Sequence realm display name. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be longer than 128 characters and it cannot be null.
4. You can specify a virtual URL based on the individual realm sequence. For more information on the virtual URL, see [Chapter 3: "Controlling Access to the Internet and Intranet" on page 25](#).
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

### Related CLI Syntax to Configure a Sequence Realm

- To enter configuration mode:  

```
SGOS#(config) security sequence create-realm realm_sequence_name
(config) security sequence edit-realm realm_sequence_name
```
- The following subcommands are available:  

```
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name)
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) display-name display_name
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) exit
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) IWA-only-once { disable |
enable }
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) realm { add | demote | promote |
remove } {realm_name | clear}
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) try-next-realm-on-error
{ disable | enable }
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) rename new_realm_name
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) view
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) virtual-url url
```

## Tips

- Explicit Proxy involving a sequence realm configured with an NTLM/IWA realm and a substitution realm.

Internet Explorer (IE) automatically sends Windows credentials in the Proxy-Authorization: header when the SG appliance issues a challenge for NTLM/IWA. The prompt for username/password appears only if NTLM authentication fails. However, in the case of a sequence realm configured with an NTLM/IWA realm and a substitution realm, the client is authenticated as a guest in the policy substitution realm, and the prompt allowing the user to correct the NTLM credentials never appears.

- Transparent Proxy setup involving a sequence realm configured with an NTLM/IWA realm and a substitution realm.

The only way the SG appliance can differentiate between a domain and non-domain user is through the NTLM/IWA credentials provided during the authentication challenge.

IE does not offer Windows credentials in the Proxy-Authorization: header when the Proxy issues a challenge for NTLM/IWA unless the browser is configured to do so. In this case, the behavior is the same as for explicit proxy.

If IE is not configured to offer Windows credentials, the browser issues a prompt for username/password, allowing non-domain users to be authenticated as guests in the policy substitution realm by entering worthless credentials.



# *Chapter 16: Windows Single Sign-on Authentication*

The Windows Single Sign-on (SSO) realm is an authentication mechanism available on Windows networks.

This section discusses the following topics:

- ❑ “[How Windows SSO Realms Work](#)” on page 181
- ❑ “[Creating a Windows SSO Realm](#)” on page 183
- ❑ “[Windows SSO Agents](#)” on page 184
- ❑ “[Configuring Authorization](#)” on page 185
- ❑ “[Defining Windows SSO Realm General Properties](#)” on page 186
- ❑ “[Creating the CPL](#)” on page 190

## **How Windows SSO Realms Work**

In a Windows SSO realm, the client is never challenged for authentication. Instead, the BCAA agent collects information about the current logged on user from the domain controller and/or by querying the client machine. Then the IP address of an incoming client request is mapped to a user identity in the domain. If authorization information is also needed, then another realm (LDAP or local) must be created. For more information, see “[How Windows SSO Authorization Works](#)” on page 183.

---

**Note:** The Windows SSO realm works reliably only in environments where one IP address maps to one user. If an IP address cannot be mapped to a single user, authentication fails. Those with NAT systems, which uses one set of IP addresses for intranet traffic and a different set for Internet traffic, should use a different realm for authentication.

---

To authenticate a user, the Windows SSO realm uses two methods, either separately or together:

- ❑ Domain Controller Querying: The domain controller is queried to identify which users are connecting to, or authenticating with, the domain controller. This can be used to infer the identity of the user at a particular workstation.
- ❑ Client Querying: The client workstation is queried to determine who the client workstation thinks is logged in.
- ❑ When Domain Controller Querying and Client Querying are both used, the Domain Controller Query result is used if it exists and is still within the valid time-to-live as configured in the `sso.ini` file. If the Domain Controller Query result is older than the configured time-to-live, the client workstation is queried.

---

**Note:** Before Domain Controller Querying or Client Querying can be used, the `sso.ini` file, located in the same directory as the BCAA service, must be modified. For information on modifying this file, see “[Modifying the sso.ini File for Windows SSO Realms](#)” on page 188.

---

For the most complete solution, an IWA realm could be configured at the same time as the Windows SSO realm and both realms added to a realm sequence. Then, if the Windows SSO realm failed to authenticate the user, the IWA realm could be used. For information on using a sequence realm, see [Chapter 15: "Sequence Realm Authentication"](#) on page 175.

## How Windows SSO Works with BCAAAs

The server side of the authentication exchange is handled by the Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA). Windows SSO uses a single BCAAAs process for all realms and proxies that use SSO.

BCAAA must be installed on a domain controller or member server. By default, the BCAAAs service authenticates users in all domains trusted by the computer on which it is running. When using Domain Controller Querying, the BCAAAs service can be configured to only query certain domain controllers in those trusted domains.

By default the BCAAAs service is installed to run as LocalSystem. For a Windows SSO realm to have correct permissions to query domain controllers and clients, the user who BCAAAs runs under must be an authenticated user of the domain.

When the Windows SSO realm is configured to do Client Querying, the user that BCAAAs runs under must be an authenticated user of the domain. For failover purposes, a second BCAAAs can be installed and configured to act as an alternate BCAAAs in the Windows SSO realm. The alternate BCAAAs service is used in the event of a failure with the primary BCAAAs service configured in the realm.

## BCAAAs Synchronization

Optionally, when using Domain Controller Querying, you can configure a BCAAAs service to use another BCAAAs service as a synchronization server. Whenever a BCAAAs service restarts it will contact its synchronization server and update its logon state. Two given BCAAAs services can use each other as their synchronization server. Thus, each BCAAAs service can act as a synchronization server to provide logon state to other BCAAAs services, as well as acting as a synchronization client to update its logon state from another BCAAAs service.

Each BCAAAs service has a synchronization priority that determines synchronization behavior. If the client BCAAAs has the same or higher priority than the server BCAAAs, synchronization is done once at restart to update the client state. Once synchronization is complete the client BCAAAs drops the synchronization connection and begins querying the domain controllers.

However, if the server BCAAAs has higher priority, then the client BCAAAs keeps the synchronization link open and continuously updates its logon state from the higher priority BCAAAs. The client BCAAAs does not query the domain controllers itself unless the synchronization link fails.

This makes it possible to manage the query load on the domain controllers. If there is no issue with load, then the default configuration (without synchronization), with all BCAAAs agents querying the domain controllers is acceptable. However, if load on the domain controllers is an issue, synchronization can be used to minimize this load while still providing fail-over capabilities.

By default, all BCAAAs agents have the same synchronization priority, meaning that they synchronize on startup and then do their own domain controller querying. To change the synchronization settings, see ["To configure the sso.ini file for synchronization:"](#) on page 189.

---

**Note:** For information on configuring the BCAAA service as an authenticated user of the domain, see Appendix B: "Using the Authentication/Authorization Agent" on page 215.

---

## How Windows SSO Authorization Works

The Windows SSO realm, in addition to allowing you to create and manipulate realm properties, such as the query type and the number of seconds that credential cache entries from this realm are valid, also contains the authorization username and the name of the realm that will do authorization for the Windows SSO realm. The authorization username is a string containing policy substitutions that describes how to construct the username for authorization lookups. This can either be an LDAP FQDN when the authorization realm is an LDAP realm, or a simple name when local realms are being used for authorization.

---

**Note:** Windows SSO realms never challenge for credentials. If the authorization username cannot be determined from the configured substitutions, authorization in the Windows SSO realm fails.

---

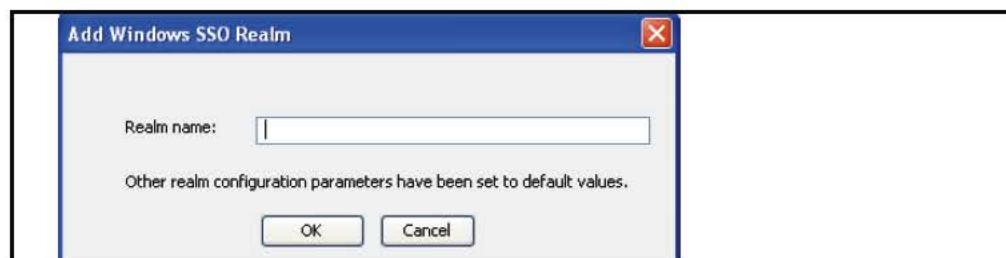
Keep in mind that Windows SSO realms do not require an authorization realm. If no authorization realm is configured, the user is not considered a member of any group. The effect this has on the user depends on the authorization policy. If the policy does not make any decisions based on groups, you do not need to specify an authorization realm. Also, if your policy is such that it works as desired when all Windows SSO realm users are not in any group, you do not have to specify an authorization realm.

## Creating a Windows SSO Realm

The Configuration > Authentication > Windows SSO > Windows SSO Realms tab allows you to create a new Windows SSO realm.

### To create a Windows SSO realm:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Windows SSO > Windows SSO Realms.
2. Click New.



3. In the **Realm name** field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long and composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Windows SSO Agents

You must configure the Windows realm so that it can find the Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA).

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Windows SSO > Agents.**

2. Select the realm name to edit from the drop-down list.

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Windows SSO realm (using the Windows SSO Realms tab) before attempting to configure the BCAAAs agent. If the message **Realms must be added in the Windows SSO Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not have any Windows SSO realms defined.

3. In the Primary agent section, enter the hostname or IP address where the BCAAAs agent resides.
4. Change the port from the default of 16101 if necessary.
5. (Optional) Enter an alternate agent host and agent name in the Alternate agent section. The primary and alternate BCAAAs server must work together to support fail-over. If the primary BCAAAs server fails, the alternate server should be able to provide the same mappings for the IP addresses.
6. (Optional) Click **Enable SSL** to enable SSL between the SG appliance and the BCAAAs.
7. (Optional) By default, if SSL is enabled, the Windows SSO BCAAAs certificate is verified. To not verify the agent certificate, disable this setting.
8. In the **Timeout Request** field, type the number of seconds the SG appliance allows for each request attempt before timing out. (The default request timeout is **60** seconds.)
9. In the **Query Type** field, select the method you want to use from the drop-down menu. By default the Windows SSO realm is configured for **Domain Controller Querying** only.

**Note:** If all of the client computers can be queried directly, then the most accurate results can be provided by the **Query Clients** option.

Client Querying is blocked by the Windows XP SP2 firewall. This can be overridden through domain policy. If the firewall setting "Allow remote administration exception" or "Allow file and printer sharing exception" or "Define port exceptions" (with port 445) is enabled, then the query will work.

If an authentication mode without surrogates is being used (Proxy or Origin authenticate mode), then the **Query Domain Controller and Client** and **Query Client** options can cause too much traffic when querying the clients, as each authentication request results in a request to the BCAAA service, which can result in a client workstation query depending on the client query time-to-live. If the client workstation querying traffic is a concern, the **Query Domain Controllers** option should be used instead.

10. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

#### *Related CLI Syntax to Create and Define a Windows SSO Realm*

1. At the (config) prompt, enter the following command to create a Windows SSO realm:

```
SGOS#(config) security windows-sso create-realm realm_name
```

where `realm_name` is the name of the Windows SSO realm.

2. To redefine the Windows SSO realm configuration for the realm you just created, enter the following commands:

```
SGOS#(config) security windows-sso edit-realm realm_name
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) primary-agent {host hostname / port port_number}
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) alternate-agent {host hostname / port port_number}
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) ssl enable
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) ssl-verify-agent enable
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) sso-type {query-client | query-dc | query-dc-client}
```

## Configuring Authorization

After the Windows SSO realm is created, you can use the Windows SSO Authorization tab to configure authorization for the realm.

---

**Note:** Windows SSO realms do not require an authorization realm. If the policy does not make any decisions based on groups, you do not need to specify an authorization realm.

---

1. Select **Configuration > Authentication > Windows SSO > Authorization**.



2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the Windows SSO realm for which you want to change realm properties.

---

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Windows SSO realm (using the Windows SSO Realms tab) before attempting to set Windows SSO realm properties. If the message **Realms must be added in the Windows SSO Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Windows SSO realms defined.

---

3. (Optional) From the **Authorization realm name** drop-down list, select the realm you want to use to authorize users.
4. To construct usernames, keep in mind that the authorization username attributes is a string. that contains policy substitutions. When authorization is required for the transaction, the character string is processed by the policy substitution mechanism, using the current transaction as input. The resulting string becomes the user's authorization name for the current transaction.
5. The LDAP FQDN is selected as the **Authorization user name**, by default. You might want to change this if the user's authorization information resides in a different root DN. To choose a different authorization name, de-select the **Use FQDN** checkbox and enter a different name, for example:  
cn=\$(user.name),ou=partition,o=company
6. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

Table 16-1. Common Substitutions Used in the Authorization username Field

| ELFF Substitution | CPL Equivalent  | Description                                      |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| x-cs-auth-domain  | \$(user.domain) | The Windows domain of the authenticated user.    |
| cs-username       | \$(user.name)   | The relative username of the authenticated user. |

#### Related CLI Syntax to *Configure Authorization Settings*

```
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) authorization realm-name
authorization-realm-name
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) authorization username
authorization-username
```

## Defining Windows SSO Realm General Properties

The **Windows SSO General** tab allows you to specify the display name, the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL.

---

**Note:** Windows SSO realms default to the origin-ip authentication mode when either no authentication mode or the auto authentication mode is specified in policy. After a user has first successfully authenticated to the SG appliance, all subsequent requests from that same IP address for the length of the surrogate refresh time are authenticated as that user. If the first user is allowed or denied access, subsequent users during that same time coming from the same IP address are allowed or denied as that first user. This is true even if policy would have treated them differently if they were authenticated as themselves.

If multiple users often log in from the same IP address, it is recommended to use a shorter surrogate refresh timeout than the default or an authentication mode that uses cookie surrogates.

---

### To configure general settings:

1. Select Configuration > Authentication > Windows SSO > Windows SSO General.

| Windows SSO Realms                                                      | Agents                                                                | Authorization | Windows SSO General |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| Realm name:                                                             | <input type="text" value="windows1"/>                                 |               |                     |
| Refresh Times:                                                          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all |               |                     |
| Surrogate refresh time:                                                 | <input type="text" value="900"/>                                      | seconds       |                     |
| Authorization refresh time:                                             | <input type="text" value="900"/>                                      | seconds       |                     |
| Inactivity timeout:                                                     | <input type="text" value="900"/>                                      | seconds       |                     |
| Cookies                                                                 |                                                                       |               |                     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies                         |                                                                       |               |                     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie |                                                                       |               |                     |
| Virtual URL:                                                            | <input type="text" value="www.cfauth.com/"/>                          |               |                     |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the Windows SSO realm for which you want to change properties.

---

**Note:** You must have defined at least one Windows SSO realm (using the Windows SSO Realms tab) before attempting to set Windows SSO general properties. If the message **Realms must be added in the Windows SSO Realms tab before editing this tab** is displayed in red at the bottom of this page, you do not currently have any Windows SSO realms defined.

---

3. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
4. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will determine which user is using the current IP address, and update the surrogate to authenticate with that user.

5. Enter the number of seconds in the **Authorization refresh time** field. The Authorization Refresh Time allows you to manage how often the authorization data is verified with the authentication realm. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.
6. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
7. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
8. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
9. You can specify a virtual URL. For more information on the virtual URL, see [“Understanding Origin-Style Redirection”](#) on page 34.
10. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

#### *Related CLI Syntax to Configure General Settings I*

```
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) refresh-time authorization-
refresh seconds
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable |
disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}}
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) virtual-url url
```

## Modifying the sso.ini File for Windows SSO Realms

To enable the method of authentication querying you choose, you must modify the `sso.ini` file by adding domain controllers you want to query and user accounts you want to ignore.

The `sso.ini` file is located in the BCAAQ installation directory.

If you are only using one method of querying, you only need configure the specific settings for that method. If you plan to use both methods to query, you must configure all the settings.

---

**Note:** The changes to the `sso.ini` file have no effect until the BCAAQ service is restarted.

---

### To configure the `sso.ini` file for Domain Controller Querying

1. Open the file in a text editor.
2. In the section DCQSetup, uncomment the line: DCQEnabled=1.
3. In the section DCQDomainControllers, list the domain controllers you want to query or the IP address ranges of interest.

By default all domain controllers that are in the forest or are trusted are queried. In large organizations, domain controllers that are not of interest for the SG appliance installation might be queried. The `sso.ini` file can be used to list the domain controllers of interest or IP address ranges of interest.

4. In the section `SSOServiceUsers`, list the domain names of users who can access the domain controller on behalf of the service and mask the identity of the logged-on user. Listing these users here forces the BCAA service to ignore them for authentication purposes.
5. Save the `sso.ini` file.

**To configure the `sso.ini` file for client querying:**

---

**Note:** Before you use the Windows SSO realm, you must change the BCAA service to run as a domain user, and, if using XP clients, update the domain policy to allow the client query to pass through the firewall.

For information on installing and configuring the BCAA service, see [Appendix B: "Using the Authentication/Authorization Agent" on page 215](#).

---

1. Open the file in a text editor.
2. Review the TTL times in the section `ClientQuerySetup` to be sure they are appropriate for your network environment.
3. Update the section `SSOServiceUsers` to ignore domain users used for services.
4. Save the `sso.ini` file.

**To configure the `sso.ini` file for synchronization:**

1. Open the file in a text editor.
2. Update the section `SSOSyncSetup` (the defaults are listed below). Note that explanations of each setting are provided in the `sso.ini` file.
  - `ServerPriority=100`
  - `EnableSyncServer=1`
  - `SyncPortNumber=16102`
  - `UseSSL=0`
  - `VerifyCertificate=0`
  - `QueryDelta=10`
  - `RetrySyncTime=60`
3. Update the section `SSOSyncServer` with the IP address or hostname of the BCAA service to use a synchronization server.
4. In the section `SSOSyncClients`, list the IP addresses or hostnames of the BCAA services that will use this BCAA service as their synchronization service.
5. Save the `sso.ini` file.

## Creating the CPL

You can create CPL policies now that you have completed Windows SSO realm configuration. Be aware that the examples below are just part of a comprehensive authentication policy. By themselves, they are not adequate for your purposes.

The examples below assume the default policy condition is *allow*. On new systems, the default policy condition is *deny*.

---

**Note:** Refer to *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide* for details about CPL and how transactions trigger the evaluation of policy file layers.

---

- Every Windows SSO-authenticated user is allowed access the SG appliance.  

```
<Proxy>
 authenticate(WSSORealm)
```
- Group membership is the determining factor in granting access to the SG appliance.  

```
<Proxy>
 authenticate(WSSORealm)
<Proxy>
 group="cn=proxyusers, ou=groups, o=myco" ALLOW
 deny
```

## Using Single Sign-On Realms and Proxy Chains

Some Application Delivery Network (ADN) configurations mask the source IP address of the request. For example, if the path for a request is:

**client workstation > branch proxy > data center proxy > gateway proxy**

policy running on the gateway might see the IP address of the data center proxy rather than the IP address of the client workstation.

---

**Note:** The source IP address is not masked if you use the **reflect client ip** attribute.

---

In this ADN configuration, policy needs to be configured so that Windows SSO, Novell SSO, and policy substitution realms can authenticate users correctly.

Use the `user.login.address` and `authenticate.credentials.address` policy gestures to override the IP address of the credentials used for authentication and match the IP address of the authenticated user.

---

**Note:** The `user.login.address` condition only works correctly if you use the `authenticate.credentials.address` property to set the address.

---

You can also use the `x-cs-user-login-address` substitution to log this event.

### Examples

In the following example, the address to use for authenticating with **myrealm** is set to the address received from the HTTP Client-IP header.

```
<proxy>
 authenticate(myrealm) \
 authenticate.credentials.address(${request.header.Client-IP})
```

In the following example, the user is authenticated if logged in from the 1.2.3.0/24 subnet.

```
<proxy>
 user.login.address=1.2.3.0/24 allow
```

## Notes

- The Windows SSO realm works reliably only in environments where one IP address maps to one user.
- This realm never uses a password.
- When doing domain controller querying, the Windows SSO realm can lose the logon if the NetBIOS computer name cannot be determined through a DNS query or a NetBIOS query. The DNS query can fail if the NetBIOS name is different than the DNS host name or if the computer is in a different DNS domain than the BCAAA computer and the BCAAA computer is not set up to impute different DNS domains.

The NetBIOS query can fail because the NetBIOS broadcast does not reach the target computer. This can happen if the computer is behind a firewall that is not forwarding NetBIOS requests or if the computer is on a subnet that is not considered to be local to the BCAAA server.

To prevent this issue, the BCAAA machine must be configured to be able to query the NetBIOS name of any computer of interest and get the correct IP address.

One workaround is to use a WINS server. This works like a DNS server but handles NetBIOS lookups.



## Chapter 17: Using XML Realms

If you use an authentication or authorization protocol that is not natively supported by Blue Coat, you can use the XML realm to integrate SGOS with the authentication/authorization protocol.

This section includes the following topics:

- “About XML Realms”
- “Before Creating an XML Realm” on page 194
- “Creating an XML Realm” on page 194
- “Configuring XML Servers” on page 195
- “Configuring XML Options” on page 196
- “Configuring XML Realm Authorization” on page 196
- “Configuring XML General Realm Properties” on page 198
- “Creating the CPL” on page 200
- “Viewing Statistics” on page 200

### About XML Realms

An XML realm uses XML messages to request authentication and authorization information from an HTTP XML service (the *XML responder* that runs on an external server). The XML realm (the *XML requestor*) supports both HTTP GET and HTTP POST methods to request an XML response. The XML messages are based on SOAP 1.2.

The XML responder service accepts XML requests from the SG, communicates with an authentication or authorization server, and responds with the result. When the realm is used to authenticate users, it challenges for Basic credentials. The username and password are then sent to the XML responder to authenticate and authorize the user.

The XML realm can place the username and password in the HTTP headers of the request or in the body of the XML POST request. If the credentials are placed in the HTTP headers, the Web server must do the authentication and the XML service just handles authorization. If credentials are placed in the XML request body, the XML service handles both authentication and authorization.

XML messages must conform to the Blue Coat XML realm schema. This is an XML schema based on SOAP 1.2. The schema can be found at <http://www.bluecoat.com/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0>.

An authenticate request sends the credentials to the XML responder and optionally sends the groups and attributes referenced in policy. The XML responder can then authenticate the credentials. The response indicates if the user was successfully authenticated and also includes the user’s groups and attributes if the XML responder is doing authorization.

An authorize request sends the authenticated username to the XML responder and optionally sends the groups and attributes referenced in policy. The response includes the user’s groups and attributes.

## Before Creating an XML Realm

The following list describes the tasks you must complete before creating an XML realm.

- ❑ Create an appropriate XML realm responder (one that is designed to talk to the Blue Coat XML realm protocol) and install it on an HTTP Web server. You can either create the responder yourself or have a third party create it, such as Blue Coat Professional Services.

To create the XML realm responder, see [Appendix D: "XML Protocol" on page 239](#) for a description of the SOAP protocol. The XML responder must correctly conform to the protocol. The XML realm performance is dependent on the response time of the XML responder.

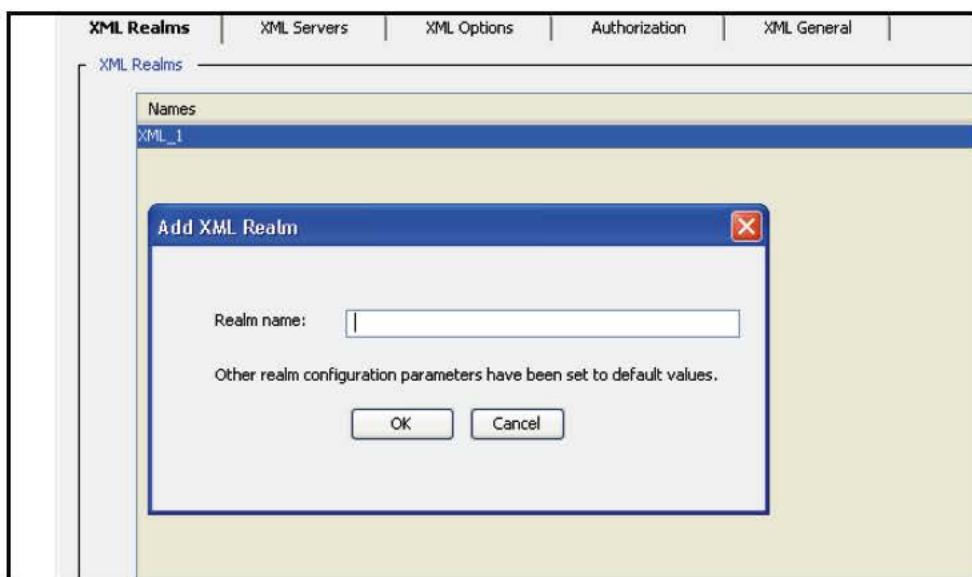
- ❑ Configure an HTTP server with appropriate authentication controls. The authentication service can either depend on the HTTP server to authenticate the credentials, or the service can authenticate them directly. If the HTTP server is used to authenticate the credentials, it must be set up to protect the service with HTTP Basic authentication.
- ❑ (Optional) Configure an alternate HTTP server for redundancy. The XML responder service must be installed on the alternate server.

## Creating an XML Realm

### To create an XML realm:

Before you create an XML realm, be sure to complete the tasks in “Before Creating an XML Realm” above.

1. In the Management Console, select **Configuration > Authentication > XML > XML Realms**.
2. Click **New**.



3. In the Realm name field, enter a realm name. The name can be 32 characters long, composed of alphanumeric characters and underscores. The name *must* start with a letter.

4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Configuring XML Servers

**Note:** You do not need to change these values if the default settings are acceptable.

After you have created an XML realm, go to the XML Servers page to change current default settings.

### To configure XML server properties:

1. In the Management Console, select **Configuration > Authentication > XML > XML Servers**.

| XML Servers                                                                                                                           |      | XML Options | Authorization | XML General |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| Realm name:                                                                                                                           | xml1 |             |               |             |
| <b>Responder</b><br>Responder: Primary<br>Host:<br>Authenticate request path: /authenticate<br>Authorize request path: /authorize     |      |             |               |             |
| Timeout request after 60 seconds; retry 0 times<br>Maximum connections to responder: 5<br><input type="checkbox"/> One-time passwords |      |             |               |             |

2. From the **Realm Name** drop-down list, select the XML realm.
3. Select the Responder options, as follows:
  - a. **Responder:** Select the XML responder service to configure—**Primary** or **Alternate**—from the drop-down list. **Primary** is the default. You can configure both responder services before clicking **Apply**.
  - b. **Host:** This is the hostname or IP address of the HTTP server that has the XML service. You must specify a host. The **port** defaults to port 80.
  - c. **Authenticate request path:** Enter the XML responder path for authentication requests.
  - d. **Authorize request path:** Enter the XML responder path for authorization requests.
4. In the **timeout request** field, enter the number of seconds for the system to wait for a request.
5. Enter the number of times for the system to retry a request. The default is not to retry a request.
6. Specify the **maximum number of connections to the responder**. The default is five connections.
7. Select the **One-time passwords** check box to use one-time passwords. This allows you to integrate with a non-Blue Coat supported authentication service that uses one-time passwords.

---

**Note:** One-time passwords are passwords that become invalid as soon as they are used. The passwords are often generated by a token or program, although pre-printed lists are also used. Using one-time passwords ensures that the password cannot be used in a replay attack.

---

8. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.
9. Repeat the above steps for additional XML realms, up to a total of 40.

## Configuring XML Options

---

**Note:** You do not need to change these values if the default settings are acceptable.

---

With XML realms, you can place the username and password in the HTTP headers of the request or in the body of the XML POST request. If the credentials are placed in the HTTP headers, the Web server can do the authentication and the XML service can just handle authorization. If the credentials are placed in the XML request body, the XML service handles both authentication and authorization.

### To configure XML options:

1. In the Management Console, select **Configuration > Authentication > XML > XML Options**.

| XML Realms                | XML Servers                                                                                                                                                                 | <b>XML Options</b> | Authorization | XML General |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------|
| Realm name:               | <input type="text" value="xml1"/>                                                                                                                                           |                    |               |             |
| User credential location: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Put user credentials for authentication in the HTTP header<br><input type="radio"/> Put user credentials for authentication in the request |                    |               |             |
| Username parameter:       | <input type="text" value="username"/>                                                                                                                                       |                    |               |             |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the XML realm.
3. Select one of the radio buttons to determine where to place the user credentials.
  - If the HTTP server is integrated with the authentication system, the HTTP server can authenticate the credentials. Select the **Put user credentials for authentication in the HTTP header** radio button. However, if this does not provide enough flexibility, the XML responder can do authentication.
  - To have the XML responder service handle both authentication and authorization, select the **Put user credentials for authentication in the request** radio button.
4. Enter the username parameter in the **Username parameter** field. The default is **username**.
5. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Configuring XML Realm Authorization

---

**Note:** You do not need to change these values if the default settings are acceptable.

---

After you have created the XML realm, you still must take into consideration how you will use authentication and authorization:

- Use an XML realm for both authorization and authentication.  
The realm is used for authentication and uses itself for authorization.
- Use an XML realm for authentication another realm for authorization.  
An XML realm can be used for authentication and use another realm for authorization. The authorization realm can be a Local realm, an LDAP realm or another XML realm.
- Use an XML realm as an authorization realm for another realm.  
An XML realm can be used as an authorization realm for another realm that is doing authentication. The authentication realm can be a Certificate realm, a Policy Substitution realm, a Novell SSO realm, a Windows SSO realm or another XML realm.

In all cases, you must write policy to authenticate and authorize the users. For information on writing policy for an XML realm, see “[Creating the CPL](#)” on page 200.

#### To configure XML authorization properties:

1. In the Management Console, select **Configuration > Authentication > XML > Authorization**.

| XML Realms                                                                                     | XML Servers | XML Options | Authorization                              | XML General |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Realm name:                                                                                    | XML_1       |             |                                            |             |
| Authorization realm name:                                                                      | None        |             | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Self   |             |
| Authorization username:                                                                        |             |             | <input type="checkbox"/> Use full username |             |
| Default group:                                                                                 |             |             |                                            |             |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Send the groups and attributes of interest in the request: |             |             |                                            |             |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the XML realm.
  - a. **Authorization realm name:** If the XML realm is not doing authorization, select an authorization realm from the drop-down list. By default, the authorization realm name is **Self**.

---

**Note:** If **Self** is selected, the **Authorization realm name** drop-down list is unavailable. To make the **Authorization realm name** drop-down list active, clear the **Self** check box.

---

- b. **Authorization username:** The default is **Use full username**. Clear the **Use full username** check box to use a different name or to use a policy substitution that generates a username.
- c. **Default group:** The default is no groups are selected.
- d. The **send the groups and attributes of interest in the request** check box is selected by default. These are the groups and attributes that are used in policy.

3. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

## Configuring XML General Realm Properties

The XML General page allows you to indicate the realm's display name, the refresh times, an inactivity timeout value, cookies, and a virtual URL for this realm.

### To configure general XML settings:

1. In the Management Console, select **Configuration > Authentication > XML > XML General**.

| XML Realms                                                                                                                            | XML Servers           | XML Options                                                                             | Authorization                           | XML General                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Realm name:<br>XML1                                                                                                                   | Display name:<br>XML1 | Refresh Times:<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the same refresh time for all | Credential refresh time:<br>900 seconds | Surrogate refresh time:<br>900 seconds  |
|                                                                                                                                       |                       | Authorization refresh time:<br>900 seconds                                              | Inactivity timeout:<br>900 seconds      | Rejected credentials time:<br>1 seconds |
| Cookies<br><input type="checkbox"/> Use persistent cookies<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Verify the IP address in the cookie |                       |                                                                                         |                                         |                                         |
| Virtual URL:<br>www.cfauth.com/                                                                                                       |                       |                                                                                         |                                         |                                         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Challenge user after logout                                                                       |                       |                                                                                         |                                         |                                         |

2. From the **Realm name** drop-down list, select the XML realm for which you want to change properties.
3. If needed, give the LDAP realm a display name. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be greater than 128 characters and it cannot be null.
4. Select the **Use the same refresh time for all** check box if you would like to use the same refresh time for all.
5. Enter the number of seconds in the **Credential refresh time** field. The Credential Refresh Time is the amount of time basic credentials (username and password) are kept on the SG appliance. This feature allows the SG appliance to reduce the load on the authentication server and enables credential spoofing. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will authenticate the user supplied credentials against the cached credentials. If the credentials received do not match the cached credentials, they are forwarded to the authentication server in case the user password changed. After the refresh time expires, the credentials are forwarded to the authentication server for verification.

6. Enter the number of seconds in the **Surrogate refresh time** field. The Surrogate Refresh Time allows you to set a realm default for how often a user's surrogate credentials are refreshed. Surrogate credentials are credentials accepted in place of a user's actual credentials. The default setting is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

Before the refresh time expires, if a surrogate (IP address or cookie) is available and it matches the expected surrogate, the SG appliance authenticates the transaction. After the refresh time expires, the SG appliance will verify the user's credentials.

Depending upon the authentication mode and the user-agent, this may result in challenging the end user for credentials.

The main goal of this feature is to verify that the user-agent still has the appropriate credentials.

7. Enter the number of seconds in the **Authorization refresh time** field. The Authorization Refresh Time allows you to manage how often the authorization data is verified with the authentication realm. It has a default setting of 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can configure this in policy for better control over the resources as policy overrides any settings made here.

8. Type the number of seconds in the **Inactivity timeout** field to specify the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

9. If you use Basic credentials and want to cache failed authentication attempts (to reduce the load on the authentication service), enter the number of seconds in the **Rejected Credentials time** field. This setting, enabled by default and set to one second, allows failed authentication attempts to be automatically rejected for up to 10 seconds. Any Basic credentials that match a failed result before its cache time expires are rejected without consulting the back-end authentication service. The original failed authentication result is returned for the new request.

All failed authentication attempts can be cached: Bad password, expired account, disabled account, old password, server down.

To disable caching for failed authentication attempts, set the **Rejected Credentials time** field to 0.

10. Select the **Use persistent cookies** check box to use persistent browser cookies instead of session browser cookies.
11. Select the **Verify the IP address in the cookie** check box if you would like the cookies surrogates to only be accepted for the IP address that the cookie was authenticated. Disabling this will allow cookies to be accepted from other IP addresses.
12. You can specify a virtual URL. For more information on the virtual URL, see [“Understanding Origin-Style Redirection”](#) on page 34.
13. Click **Apply** to commit the changes to the SG appliance.

#### *Related CLI Syntax to Configure an XML Realm*

- To enter configuration mode for the service:

```
SGOS#(config) security create xml realm_name
SGOS#(config) security edit xml realm_name
```

The following subcommands are available:

```
SGOS#(config realm_name) ?
```

```

SGOS#(config realm_name) alternate-responder {host host | path
{authenticate authenticate-path | authorize authorize-path}| port
port}
SGOS#(config realm_name) authorization {default-group-name group_name
| realm {none | realm-name realm_name | self} | username {use-full-
username | username}}
SGOS#(config realm_name) cache-duration seconds
SGOS#(config realm_name) connections number
SGOS#(config realm_name) display-name display_name
SGOS#(config realm_name) exit
SGOS#(config realm_name) no {alternate-responder | default-group-name}
SGOS#(config realm_name) one-time-passwords {enable | disable}
SGOS#(config realm_name) primary-responder {host host | path
{authenticate authenticate-path | authorize authorize-path}| port
port}
SGOS#(config realm_name) rename new_realm_name
SGOS#(config realm_name) timeout seconds
SGOS#(config realm_name) retry number
SGOS#(config realm_name) view
SGOS#(config realm_name) refresh-time credential-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config realm_name) refresh-time rejected-credentials-refresh
seconds
SGOS#(config realm_name) refresh-time surrogate-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config realm_name) refresh-time authorization-refresh seconds
SGOS#(config realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
SGOS#(config realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} |
verify-ip {enable | disable}}
SGOS#(config realm_name) virtual-url virtual_url

```

## Creating the CPL

This CPL example gives access to users who are authenticated in the XML realm called **eng\_users** and who are in the group **waterloo**. You also can create policy for XML realms through VPM.

---

**Note:** For information on using policy, refer to *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy* or *Volume 10: Blue Coat SG Appliance Content Policy Language Guide*.

---

```

<proxy>
 authenticate(eng_users)
<proxy>
 realm=eng_users group=waterloo allow

```

## Viewing Statistics

To view statistics for XML realms, click **Statistics > Advanced**. Select one of the advanced links.

## Appendix A: Glossary

### A

|                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| access control list                  | Allows or denies specific IP addresses access to a server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| access log                           | A list of all the requests sent to an appliance. You can read an access log using any of the popular log-reporting programs. When a client uses HTTP streaming, the streaming entry goes to the same access log.                                                                                   |
| account                              | A named entity that has purchased the appliance or the Entitlements from Blue Coat.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| activation code                      | A string of approximately 10 characters that is generated and mailed to customers when they purchase the appliance.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| active content stripping             | Provides a way to identify potentially dangerous mobile or active content and scripts, and strip them out of a response.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| active content types                 | Used in the Visual Policy Manager. Referring to Web Access policies, you can create and name lists of active content types to be stripped from Web pages. You have the additional option of specifying a customized message to be displayed to the user                                            |
| administration access policy         | A policy layer that determines who can access the SG appliance to perform administrative tasks.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| administration authentication policy | A policy layer that determines how administrators accessing the SG appliance must authenticate.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Application Delivery Network (ADN)   | A WAN that has been optimized for acceleration and compression by Blue Coat. This network can also be secured through the use of appliance certificates. An ADN network is composed of an ADN manager and backup ADN manager, ADN nodes, and a network configuration that matches the environment. |
| ADN backup manager                   | Takes over for the ADN manager in the event it becomes unavailable. See <i>ADN manager</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| ADN manager                          | Responsible for publishing the routing table to SG Clients (and to other SG appliances).                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| ADN optimize attribute               | Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| asx rewrite                          | Allows you to rewrite URLs and then direct a client's subsequent request to the new URL. One of the main applications of ASX file rewrites is to provide explicit proxy-like support for Windows Media Player 6.4, which cannot set explicit proxy mode for protocols other than HTTP.             |
| audit                                | A log that provides a record of who accessed what and how.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| authenticate-401 attribute | All transparent and explicit requests received on the port always use transparent authentication (cookie or IP, depending on the configuration). This is especially useful to force transparent proxy authentication in some proxy-chaining scenarios.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| authenticated content      | Cached content that requires authentication at the origin content server (OCS). Supported authentication types for cached data include basic authentication and IWA (or NTLM).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| authentication             | Allows you to verify the identity of a user. In its simplest form, this is done through usernames and passwords. Much more stringent authentication can be employed using digital certificates that have been issued and verified by a Certificate Authority. <i>See also</i> basic authentication, proxy authentication, and SSL authentication.                                                                                                                                     |
| authentication realm       | Authenticates and authorizes users to access SG services using either explicit proxy or transparent proxy mode. These realms integrate third-party vendors, such as LDAP, Windows, and Novell, with the Blue Coat operating system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| authorization              | The permissions given to an authenticated user.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>B</b>                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| bandwidth class            | A defined unit of bandwidth allocation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| bandwidth class hierarchy  | Bandwidth classes can be grouped together in a class hierarchy, which is a tree structure that specifies the relationship among different classes. You create a hierarchy by creating at least one parent class and assigning other classes to be its children.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| bandwidth management       | Classify, control, and, if needed, limit the amount of bandwidth used by network traffic flowing in or out of an SG appliance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| basic authentication       | The standard authentication for communicating with the target as identified in the URL.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| BCAAA                      | Blue Coat Authentication and Authorization Agent. Allows SGOS 5.x to manage authentication and authorization for IWA, CA eTrust SiteMinder realms, Oracle COREid, Novell, and Windows realms. The agent is installed and configured separately from SGOS 5.x and is available from the Blue Coat Web site.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| BCLP                       | Blue Coat Licensing Portal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| byte-range support         | The ability of the SG appliance to respond to byte-range requests (requests with a Range : HTTP header).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>C</b>                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| cache                      | An "object store," either hardware or software, that stores information (objects) for later retrieval. The first time the object is requested, it is stored, making subsequent requests for the same information much faster.<br><br>A cache helps reduce the response time and network bandwidth consumption on future, equivalent requests. The SG appliance serves as a cache by storing content from many users to minimize response time and prevent extraneous network traffic. |
| cache control              | Allows you to configure which content the SG appliance stores.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

|                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cache efficiency             | A tab found on the Statistics pages of the Management Console that shows the percent of objects served from cache, the percent loaded from the network, and the percent that were non-cacheable.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| cache hit                    | Occurs when the SG appliance receives a request for an object and can serve the request from the cache without a trip to the origin server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| cache miss                   | Occurs when the appliance receives a request for an object that is not in the cache. The appliance must then fetch the requested object from the origin server .                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| cache object                 | Cache contents includes all objects currently stored by the SG appliance. Cache objects are not cleared when the SG appliance is powered off.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Certificate Authority (CA)   | A trusted, third-party organization or company that issues digital certificates used to create digital signatures and public key/private key pairs. The role of the CA is to guarantee that the individuals or company representatives who are granted a unique certificate are who they claim to be.                                                                          |
| child class (bandwidth gain) | The child of a parent class is dependent upon that parent class for available bandwidth (they share the bandwidth in proportion to their minimum/maximum bandwidth values and priority levels). A child class with siblings (classes with the same parent class) shares bandwidth with those siblings in the same manner.                                                      |
| client consent certificates  | A certificate that indicates acceptance or denial of consent to decrypt an end user's HTTPS request.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| client-side transparency     | A way of replacing the appliance IP address with the Web server IP address for all port 80 traffic destined to go to the client. This effectively conceals the SG appliance address from the client and conceals the identity of the client from the Web server.                                                                                                               |
| concentrator                 | An SG appliance, usually located in a data center, that provides access to data center resources, such as file servers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| content filtering            | A way of controlling which content is delivered to certain users. SG appliances can filter content based on content categories (such as gambling, games, and so on), type (such as http, ftp, streaming, and mime type), identity (user, group, network), or network conditions. You can filter content using vendor-based filtering or by allowing or denying access to URLs. |

## D

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| default boot system     | The system that was successfully started last time. If a system fails to boot, the next most recent system that booted successfully becomes the default boot system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| default proxy listener  | <i>See proxy service (d efault).</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| denial of service (DoS) | A method that hackers use to prevent or deny legitimate users access to a computer, such as a Web server. DoS attacks typically send many request packets to a targeted Internet server, flooding the server's resources and making the system unusable. Any system connected to the Internet and equipped with TCP-based network services is vulnerable to a DoS attack.<br><br>The SG appliance resists DoS attacks launched by many common DoS tools. With a hardened TCP/IP stack, SG appliance resists common network attacks, including traffic flooding. |

|                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| destination objects             | Used in Visual Policy Manager. These are the objects that define the target location of an entry type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| detect protocol attribute       | Detects the protocol being used. Protocols that can be detected include: HTTP, P2P (eDonkey, BitTorrent, FastTrack, Gnutella), SSL, and Endpoint Mapper.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| diagnostic reporting            | Found in the Statistics pane, the Diagnostics tab allows you to control whether Daily Heartbeats and/or Blue Coat Monitoring are enabled or disabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| directives                      | Commands used in installable lists to configure forwarding and SOCKS gateway.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| DNS access                      | A policy layer that determines how the SG appliance processes DNS requests.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| domain name system (DNS)        | An Internet service that translates domain names into IP addresses. <i>See also</i> private DNS or public DNS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| dynamic bypass                  | Provides a maintenance-free method for improving performance of the SG appliance by automatically compiling a list of requested URLs that return various kinds of errors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| dynamic real-time rating (DRTR) | Used in conjunction with the Blue Coat Web Filter (BCWF), DRTR (also known as <i>dynamic categorization</i> ) provides real-time analysis and content categorization of requested Web pages to solve the problem of new and previously unknown uncategorized URLs—those not in the database. When a user requests a URL that has not already been categorized by the BCWF database (for example, a brand new Web site), the SG appliance dynamic categorization service analyzes elements of the requested content and assigns a category or categories. The dynamic service is consulted <i>only</i> when the installed BCWF database does not contain category information for an object. |

## E

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| early intercept attribute | Controls whether the proxy responds to client TCP connection requests before connecting to the upstream server. When early intercept is disabled, the proxy delays responding to the client until after it has attempted to contact the server.                                  |
| ELFF-compatible format    | A log type defined by the W3C that is general enough to be used with any protocol.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| emulated certificates     | Certificates that are presented to the user by SG appliance when intercepting HTTPS requests. Blue Coat emulates the certificate from the server and signs it, copying the subjectName and expiration. The original certificate is used between the SG appliance and the server. |
| encrypted log             | A log is encrypted using an external certificate associated with a private key. Encrypted logs can only be decrypted by someone with access to the private key. The private key is not accessible to the SG appliance.                                                           |
| EULA                      | End user license agreement.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| event logging             | Allows you to specify the types of system events logged, the size of the event log, and to configure Syslog monitoring. The appliance can also notify you by email if an event is logged. <i>See also</i> access logging.                                                        |

**explicit proxy** A configuration in which the browser is explicitly configured to communicate with the proxy server for access to content.

This is the default for the SG appliance, and requires configuration for both browser and the interface card.

**extended log file format (ELFF)** A variant of the common log file format, which has two additional fields at the end of the line—the referer and the user agent fields.

## F

**fail open/closed** Failing open or closed applies to forwarding hosts and groups and SOCKS gateways. Fail open or closed applies when health checks are showing sick for each forwarding or SOCKS gateway target in the applicable fail-over sequence. If no systems are healthy, the SG appliance fails open or closed, depending on the configuration. If closed, the connection attempt simply fails.

If open, an attempt is made to connect without using any forwarding target (or SOCKS gateway). Fail open is usually a security risk; fail closed is the default if no setting is specified.

**filtering** *See* content filtering.

**forward proxy** A proxy server deployed close to the clients and used to access many servers. A forward proxy can be explicit or transparent.

**FTP** *See* Native FTP; Web FTP.

## G

**gateway** A device that serves as entrance and exit into a communications network.

## H

**hardware serial number** A string that uniquely identifies the appliance; it is assigned to each unit in manufacturing.

**health check tests** The method of determining network connectivity, target responsiveness, and basic functionality. The following tests are supported:

- ICMP
- TCP
- SSL
- HTTP
- HTTPS
- Group
- Composite and reference to a composite result
- ICAP
- Websense
- DRTR rating service

|                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| health check type                | <p>The kind of device or service the specific health check tests. The following types are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Forwarding host and forwarding group</li><li>• SOCKS gateway and SOCKS gateway group</li><li>• CAP service and ICAP service group</li><li>• Websense off-box service and Websense off-box service group</li><li>• DRTR rating service</li><li>• User-defined host and a user-defined composite</li></ul>                                                                   |
| heartbeat                        | <p>Messages sent once every 24 hours that contain the statistical and configuration data for the SG appliance, indicating its health. Heartbeats are commonly sent to system administrators and to Blue Coat. Heartbeats contain no private information, only aggregate statistics useful for pre-emptively diagnosing support issues.</p> <p>The SG appliance sends emergency heartbeats whenever it is rebooted. Emergency heartbeats contain core dump and restart flags in addition to daily heartbeat information.</p> |
| host affinity                    | <p>The attempt to direct multiple connections by a single user to the same group member. Host affinity is closely tied to load balancing behavior; both should be configured if load balancing is important.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| host affinity timeout            | <p>The host affinity timeout determines how long a user remains idle before the connection is closed. The timeout value checks the user's IP address, SSL ID, or cookie in the host affinity table.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <hr/>                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| inbound traffic (bandwidth gain) | <p>Network packets flowing into the SG appliance. Inbound traffic mainly consists of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Server inbound: Packets originating at the origin content server (OCS) and sent to the SG appliance to load a Web object.</li><li>• Client inbound: Packets originating at the client and sent to the SG appliance for Web requests.</li></ul>                                                                                                                              |
| installable lists                | <p>Installable lists, comprised of directives, can be placed onto the SG appliance in one of the following ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Creating the list using the SG text editor</li><li>• Placing the list at an accessible URL</li><li>• Downloading the directives file from the local system</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| integrated host timeout          | <p>An integrated host is an origin content server (OCS) that has been added to the health check list. The host, added through the <code>integrate_new_hosts</code> property, ages out of the integrated host table after being idle for the specified time. The default is 60 minutes.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| intervals                        | <p>Time period from the completion of one health check to the start of the next health check.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| IP reflection                    | <p>Determines how the client IP address is presented to the origin server for explicitly proxied requests. All proxy services contain a <code>reflect-ip</code> attribute, which enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

**issuer keyring** The keyring used by the SG appliance to sign emulated certificates. The keyring is configured on the appliance and managed through policy.

## L

**licensable component (LC)** (Software) A subcomponent of a license; it is an option that enables or disables a specific feature.

**license** Provides both the right and the ability to use certain software functions within an AV (or SG) appliance. The license key defines and controls the license, which is owned by an account.

**listener** The service that is listening on a specific port. A listener can be identified by any destination IP/subnet and port range. Multiple listeners can be added to each service.

**live content** Also called live broadcast. Used in streaming, it indicates that the content is being delivered fresh.

**LKF** License key file.

**load balancing** A way to share traffic requests among multiple upstream systems or multiple IP addresses on a single host.

**local bypass list** A list you create and maintain on your network. You can use a local bypass list alone or in conjunction with a central bypass list. *See bypass list.*

**local policy file** Written by enterprises (as opposed to the central policy file written by Blue Coat); used to create company- and department-specific advanced policies written in the Blue Coat Policy Language (CPL).

**log facility** A separate log that contains a single logical file and supports a single log format. It also contains the file's configuration and upload schedule information as well as other configurable information such as how often to rotate (switch to a new log) the logs at the destination, any passwords needed, and the point at which the facility can be uploaded.

**log format** The type of log that is used: NCSA/Common, SQUID, ELFF, SurfControl, or Websense.

The proprietary log types each have a corresponding pre-defined log format that has been set up to produce exactly that type of log (these logs cannot be edited). In addition, a number of other ELFF type log formats are also pre-defined (im, main, p2p, ssl, streaming). These can be edited, but they start out with a useful set of log fields for logging particular protocols understood by the SG appliance. It is also possible to create new log formats of type ELFF or Custom which can contain any desired combination of log fields.

**log tail** The access log tail shows the log entries as they get logged. With high traffic on the SG appliance, not all access log entries are necessarily displayed. However, you can view all access log information after uploading the log.

## M

**MACH5** SGOS 5 MACH5 Edition.

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Management Console                | A graphical Web interface that lets you to manage, configure, monitor, and upgrade the SG appliance from any location. The Management Console consists of a set of Web pages and Java applets stored on the SG appliance. The appliance acts as a Web server on the management port to serve these pages and applets.                                                                        |
| management information base (MIB) | Defines the statistics that management systems can collect. A managed device (gateway) has one or more MIBs as well as one or more SNMP agents, which implements the information and management functionality defined by a specific MIB.                                                                                                                                                     |
| maximum object size               | The maximum object size stored in the SG appliance. All objects retrieved that are greater than the maximum size are delivered to the client but are not stored in the SG appliance.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| MIME/FILE type filtering          | Allows organizations to implement Internet policies for both uploaded and downloaded content by MIME or FILE type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| multi-bit rate                    | The capability of a single stream to deliver multiple bit rates to clients requesting content from appliances from within varying levels of network conditions (such as different connecting bandwidths and traffic).                                                                                                                                                                        |
| multicast                         | Used in streaming; the ability for hundreds or thousands of users to play a single stream.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| multicast aliases                 | Used in streaming; a streaming command that specifies an alias for a multicast URL to receive an .nsc file. The .nsc files allows the multicast session to obtain the information in the control channel                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| multicast station                 | Used in streaming; a defined location on the proxy where the Windows Media player can retrieve streams. A multicast station enables multicast transmission of Windows Media content from the cache. The source of the multicast-delivered content can be a unicast-live source, a multicast (live) source, and simulated live (video-on-demand content converted to scheduled live content). |
| multimedia content services       | Used in streaming; multimedia support includes Real Networks, Microsoft Windows Media, Apple QuickTime, MP3, and Flash.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>N</b>                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| name inputing                     | Allows an SG appliance to resolve host names based on a partial name specification. When a host name is submitted to the DNS server, the DNS server resolves the name to an IP address. If the host name cannot be resolved, Blue Coat adds the first entry in the name-inputing list to the end of the host name and resubmits it to the DNS server                                         |
| native FTP                        | Native FTP involves the client connecting (either explicitly or transparently) using the FTP protocol; the SG appliance then connects upstream through FTP (if necessary).                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| NCSA common log format            | Blue Coat products are compatible with this log type, which contains only basic HTTP access information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| network address translation (NAT) | The process of translating private network (such as intranet) IP addresses to Internet IP addresses and vice versa. This methodology makes it possible to match private IP addresses to Internet IP addresses even when the number of private addresses outnumbers the pool of available Internet addresses.                                                                                 |

|                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| non-cacheable objects                  | <p>A number of objects are not cached by the Blue Coat appliance because they are considered non-cacheable. You can add or delete the kinds of objects that the appliance considers non-cacheable. Some of the non-cacheable request types are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pragma no-cache, requests that specify non-cached objects, such as when you click refresh in the Web browser.</li> <li>• Password provided, requests that include a client password.</li> <li>• Data in request that include additional client data.</li> <li>• Not a GET request.</li> </ul> |
| .nsc file                              | <p>Created from the multicast station definition and saved through the browser as a text file encoded in a Microsoft proprietary format. Without an .nsc file, the multicast station definition does not work.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| NTP                                    | <p>To manage objects in an appliance, an SG appliance must know the current Universal Time Coordinates (UTC) time. By default, the SG appliance attempts to connect to a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server to acquire the UTC time. SG appliance includes a list of NTP servers available on the Internet, and attempts to connect to them in the order they appear in the NTP server list on the NTP tab.</p>                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>O</b>                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| object (used in caching)               | <p>An object is the item that is stored in an appliance. These objects can be frequently accessed content, content that has been placed there by content publishers, or Web pages, among other things.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| object (used in Visual Policy Manager) | <p>An object (sometimes referred to as a condition) is any collection or combination of entry types you can create individually (user, group, IP address/subnet, and attribute). To be included in an object, an item must already be created as an individual entry.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| object pipelining                      | <p>This patented algorithm opens as many simultaneous TCP connections as the origin server will allow and retrieves objects in parallel. The objects are then delivered from the appliance straight to the user's desktop as fast as the browser can request them.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| origin content server (OCS)            | <p>Also called origin server. This is the original source of the content that is being requested. An appliance needs the OCS to acquire data the first time, to check that the content being served is still fresh, and to authenticate users.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| outbound traffic (bandwidth gain)      | <p>Network packets flowing out of the SG appliance. Outbound traffic mainly consists of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Client outbound: Packets sent to the client in response to a Web request.</li> <li>• Server outbound: Packets sent to an OCS or upstream proxy to request a service.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>P</b>                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| PAC (Proxy AutoConfiguration) scripts  | <p>Originally created by Netscape, PACs are a way to avoid requiring proxy hosts and port numbers to be entered for every protocol. You need only enter the URL. A PAC can be created with the needed information and the local browser can be directed to the PAC for information about proxy hosts and port numbers.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| packet capture (PCAP)                  | <p>Allows filtering on various attributes of the Ethernet frame to limit the amount of data collected. You can capture packets of Ethernet frames going into or leaving an SG appliance.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

|                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| parent class (bandwidth gain)        | A class with at least one child. The parent class must share its bandwidth with its child classes in proportion to the minimum/maximum bandwidth values or priority levels.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| passive mode data connections (PASV) | Data connections initiated by an FTP client to an FTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| pipelining                           | <i>See</i> object pipelining.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| policies                             | Groups of rules that let you manage Web access specific to the needs of an enterprise. Policies enhance SG appliance feature areas such as authentication and virus scanning, and let you control end-user Web access in your existing infrastructure.<br><i>See also</i> refresh policies.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| policy-based bypass list             | Used in policy. Allows a bypass based on the properties of the client, unlike static and dynamic bypass lists, which allow traffic to bypass the appliance based on destination IP address. <i>See also</i> bypass lists and dynamic bypass.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| policy layer                         | A collection of rules created using Blue Coat CPL or with the VPM.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| pragma: no cache (PNC)               | A metatag in the header of a request that requires the appliance to forward a request to the origin server. This allows clients to always obtain a fresh copy ( <i>of the request?</i> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| proxy                                | Caches content, filters traffic, monitors Internet and intranet resource usage, blocks specific Internet and intranet resources for individuals or groups, and enhances the quality of Internet or intranet user experiences.<br>A proxy can also serve as an intermediary between a Web client and a Web server and can require authentication to allow identity based policy and logging for the client.<br>The rules used to authenticate a client are based on the policies you create on the SG appliance, which can reference an existing security infrastructure—LDAP, RADIUS, IWA, and the like. |
| Proxy Edition                        | SGOS 5 Proxy Edition.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| proxy service                        | The proxy service defines the ports, as well as other attributes, that are used by the proxies associated with the service.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| proxy service (default)              | The default proxy service is a service that intercepts all traffic not otherwise intercepted by other listeners. It only has one listener whose action can be set to bypass or intercept. No new listeners can be added to the default proxy service, and the default listener and service cannot be deleted. Service attributes can be changed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| public key certificate               | An electronic document that encapsulates the public key of the certificate sender, identifies this sender, and aids the certificate receiver to verify the identity of the certificate sender. A certificate is often considered valid if it has been digitally signed by a well-known entity, which is called a Certificate Authority (such as VeriSign).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| public virtual IP (VIP)              | Maps multiple servers to one IP address and then propagates that information to the public DNS servers. Typically, there is a public VIP known to the public Internet that routes the packets internally to the private VIP. This enables you to “hide” your servers from the Internet.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

**R**

|                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| real-time streaming protocol (RTSP)                 | A standard method of transferring audio and video and other time-based media over Internet-technology based networks. The protocol is used to stream clips to any RTP-based client.                                                                                                              |
| reflect client IP attribute                         | Enables the sending of the client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address to the upstream server. If you are using an application delivery network (ADN), this setting is enforced on the concentrator proxy through the <b>Configuration &gt; App. Delivery Network &gt; Tunneling</b> tab. |
| registration                                        | An event that binds the appliance to an account, that is, it creates the Serial#, Account association.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| remote authentication dial-in user service (RADIUS) | Authenticates user identity via passwords for network access.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| reverse proxy                                       | A proxy that acts as a front-end to a small number of pre-defined servers, typically to improve performance. Many clients can use it to access the small number of predefined servers.                                                                                                           |
| routing information protocol (RIP)                  | Designed to select the fastest route to a destination. RIP support is built into Blue Coat appliances.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| router hops                                         | The number of jumps a packet takes when traversing the Internet.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

**S**

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| secure shell (SSH)            | Also known as Secure Socket Shell. SSH is an interface and protocol that provides strong authentication and enables you to securely access a remote computer. Three utilities—login, ssh, and scp—comprise SSH. Security via SSH is accomplished using a digital certificate and password encryption. Remember that the Blue Coat SG appliance requires SSH1. An SG appliance supports a combined maximum of 16 Telnet and SSH sessions. |
| serial console                | A third-party device that can be connected to one or more Blue Coat appliances. Once connected, you can access and configure the appliance through the serial console, even when you cannot access the appliance directly.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| server certificate categories | The hostname in a server certificate can be categorized by BCWF or another content filtering vendor to fit into categories such as banking, finance, sports.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| server portals                | Doorways that provide controlled access to a Web server or a collection of Web servers. You can configure Blue Coat SG appliances to be server portals by mapping a set of external URLs onto a set of internal URLs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| server-side transparency      | The ability for the server to see client IP addresses, which enables accurate client-access records to be kept. When server-side transparency is enabled, the appliance retains client IP addresses for all port 80 traffic to and from the SG appliance. In this scheme, the client IP address is always revealed to the server.                                                                                                        |
| service attributes            | Define the parameters, such as explicit or transparent, cipher suite, and certificate verification, that the SG appliance uses for a particular service. .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

|                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SG appliance                              | A Blue Coat security and cache box that can help manage security and content on a network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| sibling class (bandwidth gain)            | A bandwidth class with the same parent class as another class.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| simple network management protocol (SNMP) | The standard operations and maintenance protocol for the Internet. It uses MIBs, created or customized by Blue Coat, to handle ( <i>needs completion</i> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| simulated live                            | Used in streaming. Defines playback of one or more video-on-demand files as a scheduled live event, which begins at a specified time. The content can be looped multiple times, or scheduled to start at multiple start times throughout the day.                                                                                                                               |
| SmartReporter log type                    | A proprietary ELFF log type that is compatible with the SmartFilter SmartReporter tool.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| SOCKS                                     | A proxy protocol for TCP/IP-based networking applications that allows users transparent access across the firewall. If you are using a SOCKS server for the primary or alternate forwarding gateway, you must specify the appliance's ID for the identification protocol used by the SOCKS gateway. The machine ID should be configured to be the same as the appliance's name. |
| SOCKS proxy                               | A generic way to proxy TCP and UDP protocols. The SG appliance supports both SOCKSv4/4a and SOCKSv5; however, because of increased username and password authentication capabilities and compression support, Blue Coat recommends that you use SOCKS v5.                                                                                                                       |
| splash page                               | Custom message page that displays the first time you start the client browser.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| split proxy                               | Employs co-operative processing at the branch and the core to implement functionality that is not possible in a standalone proxy. Examples of split proxies include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Mapi Proxy</li><li>• SSL Proxy</li></ul>                                                                                                                           |
| SQUID-compatible format                   | A log type that was designed for cache statistics and is compatible with Blue Coat products.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| squid-native log format                   | The Squid-compatible format contains one line for each request.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| SSL authentication                        | Ensures that communication is with "trusted" sites only. Requires a certificate issued by a trusted third party (Certificate Authority).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| SSL interception                          | Decrypting SSL connections.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| SSL proxy                                 | A proxy that can be used for any SSL traffic (HTTPS or not), in either forward or reverse proxy mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| static route                              | A manually-configured route that specifies the transmission path a packet must follow, based on the packet's destination address. A static route specifies a transmission path to another network.                                                                                                                                                                              |

|                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| statistics                          | Every Blue Coat appliance keeps statistics of the appliance hardware and the objects it stores. You can review the general summary, the volume, resources allocated, cache efficiency, cached contents, and custom URLs generated by the appliance for various kinds of logs. You can also check the event viewer for every event that occurred since the appliance booted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| stream                              | A flow of a single type of data, measured in kilobits per second (Kbps). A stream could be the sound track to a music video, for example.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| SurfControl log type                | A proprietary log type that is compatible with the SurfControl reporter tool. The SurfControl log format includes fully-qualified usernames when an NTLM realm provides authentication. The simple name is used for all other realm types.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| syslog                              | An event-monitoring scheme that is especially popular in Unix environments. Most clients using Syslog have multiple devices sending messages to a single Syslog daemon. This allows viewing a single chronological event log of all of the devices assigned to the Syslog daemon. The Syslog format is: "Date Time Hostname Event."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| system cache                        | The software cache on the appliance. When you clear the cache, all objects in the cache are set to expired. The objects are not immediately removed from memory or disk, but a subsequent request for any object requested is retrieved from the origin content server before it is served.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>T</b>                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| time-to-live (TTL) value            | Used in any situation where an expiration time is needed. For example, you do not want authentication to last beyond the current session and also want a failed command to time out instead of hanging the box forever.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| traffic flow<br>(bandwidth gain)    | Also referred to as <i>flow</i> . A set of packets belonging to the same TCP/UDP connection that terminate at, originate at, or flow through the SG appliance. A single request from a client involves two separate connections. One of them is from the client to the SG appliance, and the other is from the SG appliance to the OCS. Within each of these connections, traffic flows in two directions—in one direction, packets flow out of the SG appliance (outbound traffic), and in the other direction, packets flow into the SG (inbound traffic). Connections can come from the client or the server. Thus, traffic can be classified into one of four types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Server inbound</li><li>• Server outbound</li><li>• Client inbound</li><li>• Client outbound</li></ul> These four traffic flows represent each of the four combinations described above. Each flow represents a single direction from a single connection. |
| transmission control protocol (TCP) | TCP, when used in conjunction with IP (Internet Protocol) enables users to send data, in the form of message units called packets, between computers over the Internet. TCP is responsible for tracking and handling, and reassembly of the packets; IP is responsible for packet delivery.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| transparent proxy                   | A configuration in which traffic is redirected to the SG appliance without the knowledge of the client browser. No configuration is required on the browser, but network configuration, such as an L4 switch or a WCCP-compliant router, is required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

trial period Starting with the first boot, the trial period provides 60 days of free operation. All features are enabled during this time.

**U**

unicast alias Defines a name on the appliance for a streaming URL. When a client requests the alias content on the appliance, the appliance uses the URL specified in the unicast-alias command to request the content from the origin streaming server.

universal time coordinates (UTC) An SG appliance must know the current UTC time. By default, the appliance attempts to connect to a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server to acquire the UTC time. If the SG appliance cannot access any NTP servers, you must manually set the UTC time.

URL filtering *See content filtering.*

URL rewrite rules Rewrite the URLs of client requests to acquire the streaming content using the new URL. For example, when a client tries to access content on www.mycompany.com, the appliance is actually receiving the content from the server on 10.253.123.123. The client is unaware that mycompany.com is not serving the content; however, the appliance access logs indicate the actual server that provides the content.

**W**

WCCP Web Cache Communication Protocol. Allows you to establish redirection of the traffic that flows through routers.

Web FTP Web FTP is used when a client connects in explicit mode using HTTP and accesses an `ftp://` URL. The SG appliance translates the HTTP request into an FTP request for the OCS (if the content is not already cached), and then translates the FTP response with the file contents into an HTTP response for the client.

Websense log type A Blue Coat proprietary log type that is compatible with the Websense reporter tool.

**X**

XML responder HTTP XML service that runs on an external server.

XML requestor XML realm.

## *Appendix B: Using the Authentication/Authorization Agent*

The Blue Coat Systems Authentication and Authorization Agent (BCAAA) allows SGOS 5.x to manage authentication and authorization for several different realms. The agent is installed and configured separately from SGOS 5.x and is available at the Blue Coat Website.

The BCAA service must be installed on a domain controller or member server, allowing the SG to access domain controllers. The BCAA service authenticates users in all domains trusted by the computer on which it is running. A single installation of the BCAA service can support multiple appliances.

Multiple versions of BCAA can run on the same machine. This allows you to use the same machine to support versions of the SG that have different BCAA version requirements.

The BCAA install directory can include multiple executable programs.

- ❑ The program `bcaa .exe` (`bcaa` on Solaris) handles connections from SG appliances and hands them off to the correct version of the processor.
- ❑ The program `bcaa-99 .exe` (`bcaa-99` on Solaris) handles communication with versions of the SG prior to SGOS 4.2.
- ❑ The program `bcaa-100 .exe` (`bcaa-100` on Solaris) handles communication with SGOS 4.2.1, SGOS 5.1.1, and SGOS 5.1.2.
- ❑ The program `bcaa-110 .exe` (`bcaa-110` on Solaris) handles communication with SGOS 4.2.2 , SGOS 5.1.3, and SGOS 5.1.4.
- ❑ The program `bcaa-120 .exe` (`bcaa-120` on Solaris) handles communication with SGOS 4.2.3, SGOS 4.2.4, and SGOS 5.2.1 and later.

When a new version of BCAA is installed in the same installation directory as earlier versions, the earlier versions are not removed.

This allows SG appliances that were communicating with the old version to continue to operate.

### **Using the BCAA Service**

Several realms use the BCAA service:

- ❑ IWA: The BCAA service uses an Integrated Windows Authentication (IWA) to authenticate a user with Active Directory. When using IWA, the network typically chooses automatically whether to use NTLM or Kerberos (IWA).
  - NTLM: NTLM is a subset of IWA, meant to be used with Windows NT systems.
  - Kerberos: If using Kerberos, the BCAA service must share a secret with a Kerberos server (called a KDC) and register an appropriate Service Principal Name (SPN). For information on sharing a secret and registering an SPN, see “[Creating Service Principal Names for IWA Realms](#)” on page 223.

- SiteMinder and COREid: When a SiteMinder or COREid realm is referenced in policy, a BCAA service is created. The SG appliance then sends a configuration request that describes the servers to use. The BCAA service logs in to the appropriate servers and determines configuration information to be passed back to the SG appliance (such as the kind of credentials required). Responses from the SiteMinder and COREid policy servers are translated into appropriate BCAA protocol responses and returned to the SG appliance .

Before you can use the BCAA service with SiteMinder or COREid, you must configure the appropriate SG realm to work with the SiteMinder or COREid servers. The realm can be configured from the SiteMinder or COREid configuration tabs in the Management Console or from the CLI.

---

**Note:** Each (active) SiteMinder realm on the SG should reference a different agent on the Policy Server.

---

For specific information about configuring the SiteMinder realm to work with the CA eTrust policy servers, see [Chapter 12: "CA eTrust SiteMinder Authentication"](#) on page 143. For specific information about configuring the COREid realm to work with Oracle COREid Access Servers, see [Chapter 6: "Oracle COREid Authentication"](#) on page 79.

- Windows Single Sign-on (SSO): The BCAA service is used to supply mappings for IP addresses to logged on users. The Windows SSO realm can use domain controller querying, or client querying, or both domain controller and client querying to determine the logged-on user.

To use domain controller querying, you must configure the `sso.ini` file to enable it and to add the domain controllers you want to query. For information on configuring the `sso.ini` file, see ["Modifying the sso.ini File for Windows SSO Realms"](#) on page 188.

- Novell SSO: The BCAA service manages communication with the Novell eDirectory server. This realm also requires that the `sso.ini` file be configured. For information on configuring the `sso.ini` file, see ["Modifying the sso.ini File for Novell SSO Realms"](#) on page 171.

## Performance Notes

Blue Coat recommends that the Windows BCAA service be installed on a dedicated Windows machine. Installation of any other non-essential software might degrade the BCAA service performance, which in turn degrades the user experience.

This is because the BCAA server is in the client data path for accessing protected resources. Users make client requests to the SG appliance, which in turn proxies authentication requests to the BCAA service. The user must wait for the authentication request to complete before the SG appliance responds to the user with a protected resource.

Operating system requirements are:

- IWA and COREid: Windows® 2000 or later.
- SiteMinder: Windows 2000 or later or Solaris™ 5.8 or 5.9.
- Novell SSO: Windows 2000 or later
- Windows SSO: Windows 2000 or later

The appendix discusses:

- “Installing the BCAAA Service on a Windows System”
- “Installing the BCAAA Service on a Solaris System” on page 222
- “Creating Service Principal Names for IWA Realms” on page 223
- “Troubleshooting Authentication Agent Problems” on page 225
- “Common BCAAA Event Messages” on page 225

## Installing the BCAAA Service on a Windows System

All images in this section are from a Windows 2000 system. For information on SSL issues with systems running pre-Windows 2003, skip to “[Notes on SSL and Systems Running pre-Windows 2003](#)” on page 222 after installation is complete; for information on specific issues with systems running Windows 2003 or later, skip to “[Notes on SSL and Systems Running Windows 2003 and Later](#)” on page 222 after installation is complete.

---

**Note:** The firewall on Windows machine should be disabled for BCAAA to work.

---

### To install the authentication agent:

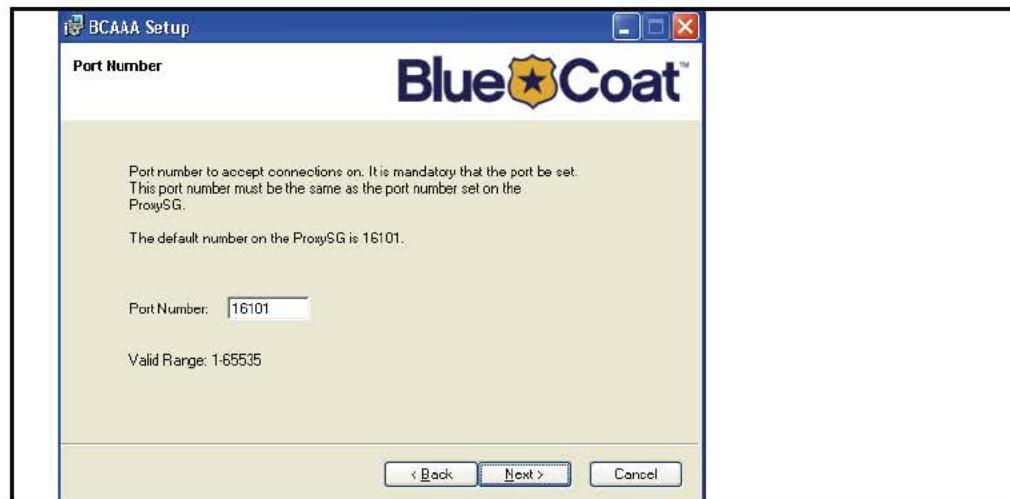
1. Download the file from the Blue Coat download site at  
<https://download.bluecoat.com/>
2. Launch the install wizard.
3. Click **Next** to select the destination folder.

---

**Note:** When doing an upgrade from one version of BCAAA to another version of BCAAA, you must install into the previous BCAAA folder to retain your settings. If you install to a different folder, a new .ini file with default settings is created.

---

4. Click **Browse** to select a different destination folder for the BCAAA service.
5. Click **Next** to accept the default and select the port number.



6. The port number must match the port number you specify on the SG for the BCAA service. The default is 16101.
7. Click **Next** to select the number of threads.



8. The recommended (and default) value is 2. The maximum number of threads allowed is 99 per SG. After selecting the number, click **Next** to specify the SSL requirements.



9. The default is that SSL is Permitted, allowing both SSL and non-SSL connections. This setting must be compatible with the setting on the SG appliance.
10. Click **Next** to specify the subject of the SSL certificate.



11. Specify the subject of the certificate.

The BCAA service looks up the specified subject in the service's certificate store. If it finds the subject, it uses it instead of generating a new certificate. If not, it generates a self-signed certificate with that subject. This generated certificate can be saved (as specified on the next screen).

12. Click **Next** to specify save options for the certificate.



13. Click **Next** to specify whether the SG appliance must provide a valid certificate when connecting to the BCAA service.



14. To force the SG to provide a valid certificate to connect to the BCAA service, select the **Yes** radio button. The default is **No**.
15. Click **Next** to view the summary of the changes you made.
16. Click **Install** to install the BCAA service using the settings you configured.

When installation completes, the final BCAA screen displays.

**To modify settings or uninstall the authentication agent:**

1. Launch the install wizard.



2. Click **Modify** to re-enter the installation wizard; click **Remove** to uninstall the BCAA service from the system.

**Note:** For instructions on using the installation wizard, see “[Installing the BCAA Service on a Windows System](#)” on page 217.

3. Click **Next** to start the procedure.
4. Click **Finish** to exit the uninstall application.

### To view the application event log

The BCAA service logs all errors to the Windows 2000 Application Event Log under the name BCAA.

1. Launch the Event Log.
2. Doubleclick the information message BCAA service to see that the BCAA service has been automatically started.

### To view the BCAA service

The BCAA service logs all errors to the Windows 2000 Application Event Log under the name BCAA.

1. Launch the Event Viewer.
2. Right-click on **BCAA** and select **Properties** to manage the service. For example, to make the BCAA service start only manually, set the **Startup Type** to **Manual**. (**Automatic** is the default setting.)

## Completing Setup for the BCAA Service

Once the BCAA service is installed, you must complete BCAA setup by configuring the service to work with Windows.

### To configure the BCAA service:

1. Open the properties panel for the BCAA service.
  - a. Select the **Log-on** tab.
  - b. Change the account to the one you created for the BCAA service, and enter the password.
  - c. Click **OK**. You might be warned that the account has been given **logon as service** privileges.
2. Verify in Local Security Policy's **User Rights Assignment** folder that the BCAA Service user account has been added to the list of the **Log on as a service** policy.

---

**Note:** You must have modify/write privileges in the BCAA folder.

---

3. (Optional) If group-based authorization is being done, then:
  - Ensure that the user impersonation privilege is set for the SERVICE group. For more information setting the user impersonation privilege, see: <http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;831218>.
  - Ensure that the Active Directory computer account running the BCAA service has the **Trust computer for delegation** configuration property enabled.
4. (Optional) For all users authenticating to the SG using IWA realms, user accounts in the Active Directory must have permission to log onto the machine where the BCAA server is running.
5. Go to the user's account properties user account tab.
6. Click the **Log On To...** button to specify the domain that computers can log onto. If the network environment restricts users to specific computers, then each user must have the name of the host running the BCAA service added to their list.

## Notes on SSL and Systems Running pre-Windows 2003

The BCAA service fails to negotiate an SSL connection under certain conditions when the BCAA user is changed.

If the BCAA was originally running as LocalSystem and a self-signed certificate was created and saved (that is, you chose to save the automatically generated certificate option) SSL fails if the BCAA service is changed to run as a different user.

### To solve this:

1. Stop the BCAA service.
2. From the Run prompt, type mmc, which is the Microsoft Management Console.
3. Click **File > Add/Remove Snap-in > Add > Certificates > Add Service Account > Local Computer > BCAA**
4. Delete any certificate shown in the BCAA/Personal category.

Now when the BCAA is run, it can create a new certificate and successfully handle an SSL connection.

## Notes on SSL and Systems Running Windows 2003 and Later

The BCAA service fails to negotiate an SSL connection under certain conditions when the BCAA user is changed.

The certificate store can only be accessed by a Domain Administrator or LocalSystem. If the BCAA service is running as a Domain User who does not have Domain Administrator privileges, it cannot negotiate an SSL connection.

### Solutions:

- Make the BCAA user a Domain Administrator or an Administrator of the computer where the BCAA service is running.
- Give the BCAA user access the certificate store:
  - Stop the BCAA service.
  - From the Run prompt, launch the regedit program to give the BCAA user full access to the following key and its children:  
`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Cryptography\Services`

## Installing the BCAA Service on a Solaris System

To install the BCAA service on Solaris, complete the following instructions. You must be root to complete installation.

---

**Note:** For successful installation of the BCAA service on a Solaris system, you need `libstdc++.so.5`", usually installed with package  
`SFWgcc32 gcc-3.2 - GNU Compiler Collection Version 3.2`

---

1. Download the shell script to your system.
2. Execute the shell script:  
`# sh bcaa-version_number-SOLARIS-install.sh`

3. Answer the questions to install the service on your Solaris system. A sample session is shown below:

```
Enter a path to a scratch directory [/tmp]:
Install Blue Coat Systems Authentication and Authorization Agent
(BCAAA) ? (y/n)y
Enter user that should own the installed files [root]
Enter group for the installed files [root]
/usr/local/bin/bcaaaa installed
/usr/local/bin/bcaaaa-100 installed
Libraries installed in /usr/local/lib/BlueCoatSystems/
/usr/local/etc/bcaaaa.ini installed
If you use inetd, append the following line to /etc/services
bcaaaa 16101/tcp #Blue Coat Systems
Authentication Agent
If you use inetd, append the following line to /etc/inetd.conf, then
signal inetd to re-read the configuration file
If you use something else, make the equivalent changes
bcaaaa stream tcp nowait root /usr/local/bin/bcaaaa bcaaaa -c /usr/local/
etc/bcaaaa.ini
Installation complete
```

## Creating Service Principal Names for IWA Realms

For the BCAAA service to participate in an IWA Kerberos authentication exchange, it must share a secret with the Kerberos server (called a KDC) and have registered an appropriate Service Principal Name (SPN).

You can share the secret two ways:

LocalSystem

In this approach the SPN is registered with the NetBIOS name of the machine on which BCAAA is running. BCAAA runs under LocalSystem (the default for services), and uses the machine's shared secret.

The primary advantage of this approach is convenience: it works with the default settings for service installation. The disadvantage is that only one BCAAA server is allowed for the realm, so you cannot have a backup server.

---

**Note:** Handling of the shared secret is done by Windows when the machine joins the domain; there is no explicit knowledge of the shared secret by SGOS or by BCAAA.

---

Service Account

You can also create a service account for the BCAAA service and register the SPN on the service account. This allows multiple servers to run BCAAA all using the same account.

The advantage is the ability to have a backup BCAAA server. The disadvantage is that it requires additional configuration on the Active Directory server, the domain controller, and on each BCAAA machine. It is also less secure, since the BCAAA account password is shared among multiple machines.

**To share a secret by creating a service account:**

---

**Note:** All steps require administrator privileges.

---

1. Go to the Active Directory server.
2. Create an account for use by the BCAAA service.
3. Create a password.
4. On the domain controller, open the domain policy console and modify the Local Policy's user rights assignment and allow the account you created in on the Active Directory to have the right to "act as the operating system."
5. Run the following command:

```
setspn -A HTTP/FQDN-of-host name
```

where *name* is the name of the account created in step 1 and the FQDN is the virtual URL that was set in the authentication realm. For example:

```
setspn -A HTTP/krbproxy.authteam.waterloo.bluecoat.com authteam\krb-
bcaaa
```

---

**Note:** The setspn application might have to be downloaded from Microsoft. It is installed by default in program files\resource kit.

---

**(Optional) To create a group account (a BCAAA user account capable of doing group-based authorization):**

If group-based authorization is being done, then:

1. Ensure that the user impersonation privilege is set for the SERVICE group.

---

**Note:** For information on setting the user impersonation privilege, see

<http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;831218>

---

2. Ensure that the Active Directory computer account running the BCAAA service has the "Trust computer for delegation" configuration property enabled.

On each machine where you want to run the BCAAA service:

1. Install the BCAAA service as normal.
2. Open the Properties panel for the BCAAA service and select the Logon tab. Change the account to the one you created on the Active Directory server, and enter the password. When you click OK, it might warn you that the account has been granted "Log On as A Service right".
3. Change the security on the BCAAA install directory to give the account created on the Active Directory server full control.

All these machines now share the same secret with the KDC and can decrypt service tickets intended for the service described by the SPN.

## Troubleshooting Authentication Agent Problems

This section describes some common problems you might encounter when setting up or using the BCAA service on a Windows platform.

To troubleshoot the BCAA service, launch the event viewer.

The Properties pane displays, providing information about the status of the BCAA service at that time. Note the Type and the Event ID. The description below the Type/Event ID lists the problem. You can often find more information about the problem and suggestions for its solution in “[Common BCAA Event Messages](#)” on page 225.

Common problems:

- If an attempt to start the BCAA service is issued when BCAA is already started, the following error message displays:

*The requested service has already been started.*

- If another application is using the same port number as the BCAA service, the following messages are displayed:

*The BCAA service could not be started.*

*A system error has occurred.*

*System error 10048 has occurred.*

*Only one usage of each socket address (protocol/network address/port) is normally permitted.*

## Common BCAA Event Messages

Following are the most common event messages that can be logged to the Windows 2000 Application Event Log. Most of the event messages not listed here are error status messages returned by Win32 function calls. When a Win32 call fails, the error code and error text containing the reason for the error displays in the event log under the name BCAA.

### To view the BCAA event log:

1. Right click on **My Computer** and select **Manage**.
2. Select **System Tools > Event Viewer > Application**.

For each BCAA event message, the event message is displayed along with the event number.

Table B-1. BCAA Event Messages

| Message ID | Message                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                 |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 200        | Various messages                                                                                                                | The associated message provides information about a condition that is not an error.         |
| 300        | Various messages                                                                                                                | The associated message warns about an unexpected condition that does not prevent operation. |
| 400        | Various messages                                                                                                                | The associated message describes an error condition that prevents normal operation.         |
| 1001       | Authentication Agent service started:<br>port=# threads=# socket=0x#<br>process id=# agent version=#<br>SG Appliance version=## | This indicates successful startup and provides information about the agent.                 |

Table B-1. BCAA Event Messages (Continued)

| Message ID | Message                                                                            | Description                                                                                                    |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1002       | Authentication Agent stopped                                                       | This indicates normal shutdown of the service.                                                                 |
| 1003       | SG Appliance (a.b.c.d) connected; Process # spawned as #                           | This indicates a SG appliance has connected to the agent (Windows only).                                       |
| 1004       | SG Appliance agent process exited (normal logout)                                  | This indicates normal logout by a SG appliance.                                                                |
| 1005       | Process %d has terminated, ExitCode=0x#, link=0x#                                  | This indicates an unexpected termination of an agent process (Windows only).                                   |
| 1006       | Service dispatcher exited.                                                         | This indicates an unexpected termination of the service dispatcher.                                            |
| 1007       | CreateNamedPipe failed, pipe='%s'                                                  | The agent dispatcher could not create the named pipe for the reason given.                                     |
| 1008       | ConnectNamedPipe failed, pipe='%'s'                                                | The agent process could not obtain the information from the dispatcher on the named pipe for the reason given. |
| 1009       | WriteFile failed, pipe='%'s'                                                       | The dispatcher could not write information to the named pipe for the reason given.                             |
| 1011       | CreateThread (ProcessTimerThread) failed                                           | The dispatcher could not create its timer thread.                                                              |
| 1012       | Failed to create SG Appliance process '%s'                                         | The BCAAA server does not have the same version of BCAAA available as the SG is expecting.                     |
| 1019       | Various                                                                            | The dispatcher was unable to determine the exit status of an agent process.                                    |
| 1020       | Terminating SG Appliance process #, ProcNum=# Handle=0x#                           | An agent process was active when the Windows service was shut down.                                            |
| 1022       | Various                                                                            | The associated message reports the status of a SG appliance login attempt.                                     |
| 1101       | BasicAuth: CloseHandle failed; user 'xx\\xx'                                       | The agent was unable to close the login handle for the specified user.                                         |
| 1102       | Username: '%s\\%s' too long                                                        | The SG appliance offered the specified username, which is too long.                                            |
| 1106       | Various                                                                            | An attempted authentication using BASIC credentials failed for the reason given.                               |
| 1107       | User Right 'Act as part of the operating system' required for Basic Authentication | The agent does not have the necessary privileges to do BASIC authentication                                    |
| 1108       | Various                                                                            | The agent was unable to determine information about the user for the reason given.                             |
| 1202       | Unable to create GroupsOfInterest mutex 'xx' - already exists                      | The agent could not create the Windows mutex needed for group authorization checks because it already exists.  |
| 1203       | Unable to create GroupsOfInterest mutex 'xx'                                       | The agent could not create the Windows mutex needed for group authorization checks.                            |

Table B-1. BCAA Event Messages (Continued)

| Message ID | Message                                                           | Description                                                                                        |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1204       | OpenMutex failed for AuthGroups mutex '%s', group=%s'             | The agent was unable to open the Windows mutex needed for group authorization checks.              |
| 1205       | Various                                                           | The agent was unable to close the Windows mutex named for the reason given.                        |
| 1207       | GetAclInformation failed                                          | The agent was unable to obtain ACL information needed to do group authorization checks.            |
| 1209       | GetKernelObjectSecurity failed for AuthGroup=%s'                  | The agent was unable to obtain security information about the specified group.                     |
| 1210       | SetKernelObjectSecurity failed                                    | The agent was unable to set up security information for the reason specified.                      |
| 1211       | InitializeSecurityDescriptor failed                               | The agent was unable to initialize the security descriptor for the reason specified.               |
| 1212       | GetSecurityDescriptorDacl failed                                  | The agent was unable to get the discretionary access control list (DACL) for the reason specified. |
| 1213       | SetSecurityDescriptorDacl failed                                  | The agent was unable to set the discretionary access control list (DACL) for the reason specified. |
| 1214       | InitializeAcl failed                                              | The agent was unable to initialize the access control list (ACL) for the reason specified.         |
| 1215       | GetUserName failed for AuthGroup=%s'                              | The agent was unable to determine the username while processing the specified group.               |
| 1217       | GetAce failed for AuthGroup=%s'                                   | The agent was unable to get the access control entry (ACE) for the specified group.                |
| 1218       | AddAce failed                                                     | The agent was unable to add the necessary access control entry (ACE) for the reason specified.     |
| 1219       | AddAccessAllowedAce failed                                        | The agent was unable to add the necessary "access allowed" access control entry (ACE).             |
| 1220       | Could not establish groups-of-interest: result=0x##               | The agent was unable to initialize groups-of-interest checking.                                    |
| 1221       | AuthGroup '%s' does not exist                                     | The specified group does not exist.                                                                |
| 1222       | IWA RevertSecurityContext failed, user=%s'                        | The agent could not revert the security context for the specified user.                            |
| 1223       | BASIC: RevertToSelf failed, user=%s'                              | The agent could not revert the security context for the specified user.                            |
| 1224       | Error calling OpenProcessToken                                    | The agent's call to OpenProcessToken failed for the specified reason.                              |
| 1225       | Error calling LookupPrivilegeValue                                | The agent could not get information about a needed privilege.                                      |
| 1226       | Error calling AdjustTokenPrivileges                               | The agent could not adjust its privileges as required.                                             |
| 1227       | ImpersonateLoggedOnUser failed; Group access denied for user '%s' | The agent could not impersonate the specified user.                                                |

Table B-1. BCAA Event Messages (Continued)

| Message ID | Message                                                                             | Description                                                                                                           |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1228       | IWA: ImpersonateSecurityContext failed; Group access denied for user '%s'           | The agent could not impersonate the specified user.                                                                   |
| 1301       | NOTE: Pending ContextLink=### timed out; deleting SecurityContext h=## TS=## now=## | The SG appliance did not provide a response to a challenge quickly enough.                                            |
| 1302       | Various                                                                             | An authentication request from a SG appliance referenced an in-progress request that has timed out or does not exist. |
| 1304       | Various                                                                             | The agent was unable to delete a security context for the reason given.                                               |
| 1305       | AcceptSecurityContext failure, SEC_E_INVALID_HANDLE, ContextLink=### count=#        | The agent was provided with an invalid context handle.                                                                |
| 1306       | Various                                                                             | The client provided an invalid token to the authentication system.                                                    |
| 1308       | AcceptSecurityContext failure, ContextLink=# count=#, detail=#(xxx)                 | Windows rejected the authentication attempt for the reason given.                                                     |
| 1310       | Various                                                                             | This records the failure of NTLM authentication or group authorization.                                               |
| 1311       | 3:Failed NTLM Authentication for user: '%s'                                         | This records the failure of NTLM authentication; the user name was supplied by the client.                            |
| 1312       | Various                                                                             | The agent could not determine the username from the NTLM type 3 message supplied by the client.                       |
| 1313       | Invalid Type3 message                                                               | The client provided an NTLM type 3 message that was invalid.                                                          |
| 1314       | BASE64_Decode: Length of token exceeds max (%d)                                     | The client provided an NTLM token that was too long.                                                                  |
| 1316       | Unsupported version in request: %d(0x%x)                                            | The SG appliance sent a request with an unsupported version number.                                                   |
| 1401       | Various                                                                             | The agent lost communication with the SG appliance.                                                                   |
| 1403       | Various                                                                             | The agent is aborting for the reason given.                                                                           |
| 1402       | Unexpected thread 0 exit                                                            | The agent exited unexpectedly.                                                                                        |
| 1404       | Unable to get ProcessInfo from parent process.                                      | The agent could not obtain its information from the dispatcher.                                                       |
| 1405       | CreateFile failed, pipe='xx'                                                        | The agent could not create a handle for the dispatcher's named pipe.                                                  |
| 1406       | WaitNamedPipe failed, pipe='%s'                                                     | The agent could not wait for the dispatcher's named pipe.                                                             |
| 1407       | ReadFile failed, pipe='%s'                                                          | The agent could not read information from the dispatcher's named pipe.                                                |

Table B-1. BCAA Event Messages (Continued)

| Message ID | Message                                                                         | Description                                                                                      |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1409       | Various                                                                         | The agent could not create the specified thread for the reason given.                            |
| 1412       | Various                                                                         | The agent could not create a required Windows event object.                                      |
| 1413       | AuthMethod 'xcs' not supported: returning _AuthResult=0x##                      | The SG appliance requested an unsupported authentication mechanism.                              |
| 1414       | Various                                                                         | The specified request is unsupported.                                                            |
| 1500       | Various                                                                         | The agent has a problem with memory allocation; typically this means there is not enough memory. |
| 1501       | Unable to allocate memory for ProcLink buffer.                                  | The agent could not allocate some needed memory.                                                 |
| 1502       | Unable to allocate memory for ContextLink buffer.                               | The agent could not allocate some needed memory.                                                 |
| 1503       | Various                                                                         | The agent was unable to allocate needed memory.                                                  |
| 1604       | Service dispatch failed                                                         | The Windows service dispatcher failed to start.                                                  |
| 1605       | RegisterServiceCtrlHandler failed                                               | The agent dispatcher was unable to register the service control handler.                         |
| 1608       | SetServiceStatus failed, g_StatusHandle=%d                                      | The agent was unable to set the service's status.                                                |
| 1610       | Unsupported service control code: #                                             | Windows sent a service control code that the agent does not support.                             |
| 1701       | WSASocket failed                                                                | The agent could not create a Windows socket for the reason given.                                |
| 1702       | WSAStartup failed.                                                              | The agent could not start the Windows socket for the reason given.                               |
| 1703       | Various                                                                         | The agent could not send data to the SG appliance for the reason given.                          |
| 1704       | Various                                                                         | The agent could not receive data from the SG appliance for the reason given.                     |
| 1705       | accept failed                                                                   | The agent dispatcher could not initialize to accept new connections.                             |
| 1706       | bind failed, PortNumber=#                                                       | The agent dispatcher could not bind to the specified port.                                       |
| 1707       | listen failed.                                                                  | The agent dispatcher could not listen for new connections.                                       |
| 1708       | Various                                                                         | Windows reported an event wait failure to the agent while doing I/O on the socket.               |
| 1709       | The agent is already running or the agent's port # is in use by another process | Some other process is already using the port needed by the agent.                                |

Table B-1. BCAA Event Messages (Continued)

| Message ID | Message                                                                | Description                                                                            |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1710       | WSARecv failed reading bytes from socket                               | Windows reported an error when the agent tried to receive bytes from the SG appliance. |
| 1711       | WSASend failed sending bytes to socket.                                | Windows reported an error when the agent tried to send bytes to the SG appliance.      |
| 1712       | Various                                                                | A socket I/O operation did not complete successfully.                                  |
| 1801       | Error calling AcquireCredentialsHandle                                 | The agent could not acquire its credentials from Windows.                              |
| 1803       | Various                                                                | The agent could not load a needed library (DLL).                                       |
| 1804       | Various                                                                | The agent could not locate the needed services in a library (DLL).                     |
| 1805       | Unsupported SSPI Windows platform; PlatformId=#                        | The reported Windows platform is not supported for NTLM authentication.                |
| 1806       | Error calling QueryContextAttributes                                   | The agent could not determine the authenticated user's security attributes.            |
| 1807       | QuerySecurityPackageInfo failed                                        | The agent could not get needed security information from Windows.                      |
| 1808       | Max Token size too long (#); max size is #                             | The client supplied an NTLM token that is too long.                                    |
| 1809       | FreeContextBuffer failed                                               | An attempt to free the NTLM context buffer failed.                                     |
| 1811       | Username 'x\\y' too long                                               | The reported user name is too long.                                                    |
| 1901       | Admin Services Error: Access denied to domain/user/group information   | The agent was unable to access necessary information.                                  |
| 1902       | Admin Services Error: Invalid computer from which to fetch information | The computer to be used to get security information is invalid.                        |
| 1903       | Admin Services Error: Group not found                                  | The requested group could not be found.                                                |
| 1904       | Various                                                                | The reported error was encountered while browsing.                                     |
| 1905       | Admin services error: could not translate context to Unicode           | The requested object for browsing could not be translated to Unicode                   |
| 1906       | Admin service out of memory                                            | The browsing service ran out of memory.                                                |
| 1907       | Search request object too long: # > #                                  | The requested object for browsing is too long.                                         |
| 2000       | AcquireCredentialsHandle failed: 0x#                                   | The agent could not acquire the credentials needed for an SSL session.                 |
| 2001       | Various                                                                | The agent was unable to negotiate an SSL session for the reason given.                 |
| 2002       | Various                                                                | An I/O error occurred during an SSL session .                                          |
| 2003       | Various                                                                | The specified cryptographic error occurred during an SSL session.                      |

Table B-1. BCAA Event Messages (Continued)

| Message ID | Message | Description                                                               |
|------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2004       | Various | The specified problem occurred with a certificate during SSL negotiation. |



## *Appendix C: Managing the SSL Client*

### Understanding the SSL Client

The SSL client is used to determine various SSL parameters for outgoing HTTPS connections. Specifically, its role is to:

- ❑ Identify the SSL protocol version the SG uses in negotiations with origin servers.
- ❑ Identify the cipher suites used.
- ❑ Determine which certificate can be presented to origin servers by associating a keyring with the SSL client.

### Creating an SSL Client

The SG is configured with a default SSL client.

Creation of the SSL client means that for every HTTPS connection to the destination server, the SG picks the parameters needed for negotiating the SSL connection from the SSL-client configuration. Thus, multiple SSL connections to different HTTPS destination servers can be supported with a single SSL-client configuration. This is similar to a browser where one configuration is used to negotiate multiple connections with different hosts.

When the SG is acting as an SSL client (SSL origination), SSL sessions are re-used until the server forces a fresh handshake or until the same session ID has been used 255 times.

If you just need to change the protocol, the cipher suites, or the keyring associated with the SSL client, you do not need to recreate the client. Continue with “[Associating a Keyring and Protocol with the SSL Client](#)” on page 233 or “[Changing the Cipher Suites of the SSL Client](#)” on page 234.

#### To create the SSL client:

```
SGOS#(config ssl) create ssl-client default
defaulting protocol to SSLv2v3TLSv1
defaulting associated keyring-id to default
ok
```

#### To delete the SSL client:

```
SGOS#(config ssl) delete ssl-client default
ok
```

### Associating a Keyring and Protocol with the SSL Client

The SSL client, called default, already exists on the SG. Keyrings that are not used to authenticate encrypted connections do not need to be associated with the SSL client.

**Important: Only one keyring can be associated with the SSL client at a time.**

#### To associate a keyring with the SSL client and change the protocol version:

1. Select **Configuration>SSL>SSL Client**.
2. Verify **Use SSL Client** is selected.

3. Only keyrings with certificates can be associated with the SSL client, displayed in the **Keyring** drop-down list. Select the keyring used to negotiate with origin content servers through an encrypted connection.
4. You can change the SSL Versions default from **SSLv2v3TLSv1** to any other protocol listed in the drop-down list.
5. Click OK; click **Apply**

*Related CLI Syntax to Associate a Keyring and Protocol with the SSL Client*

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ssl-client default
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client default) keyring-id keyring_id
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client default) protocol {sslv2 | sslv3 | tlsv1 |
sslv2v3 | sslv2tlsv1 | sslv3tlsv1 | sslv2v3tlsv1}
```

## Changing the Cipher Suites of the SSL Client

The cipher suite sets the encryption method used by the SG. As the encryption key strength is determined by the signed certificate, configuring a higher cipher suite than defined by the certificate has no affect. Conversely, the cipher suite configuration must be high enough to accommodate certification encryption values.

This can only be done through the CLI.

### To change the cipher suite of the SSL client:

The default is to use all ciphers.

You have a choice of using the interactive or non-interactive `create` command.

---

**Note:** Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create cipher suites. For more information on Director, refer to the *Blue Coat Director Configuration and Management Guide*.)

---

To change the cipher suites used through the:

- interactive command: continue with the next procedure.
- non-interactive command: skip to “[To change the cipher suites non-interactively:](#)” on page 235.

### To change the cipher suites using the interactive cipher-suites command:

Note that the `use` column in the `set cipher-suite` output below indicates that the default is to use all ciphers.

1. Choose the cipher suites you want to use at the prompt.

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ssl-client default
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client default) cipher-suite
SSL-Client Name Keyring Name Protocol
----- ----- -----
default default SSLv2v3TLSv1
```

| Cipher# | Use | Description         | Strength |
|---------|-----|---------------------|----------|
| 1       | yes | RC4-MD5             | Medium   |
| 2       | no  | RC4-SHA             | Medium   |
| 3       | no  | DES-CBC3-SHA        | High     |
| 4       | no  | DES-CBC3-MD5        | High     |
| 5       | no  | RC2-CBC-MD5         | Medium   |
| 6       | no  | RC4-64-MD5          | Low      |
| 7       | no  | DES-CBC-SHA         | Low      |
| 8       | no  | DES-CBC-MD5         | Low      |
| 9       | no  | EXP1024-RC4-MD5     | Export   |
| 10      | no  | EXP1024-RC4-SHA     | Export   |
| 11      | no  | EXP1024-RC2-CBC-MD5 | Export   |
| 12      | no  | EXP1024-DES-CBC-SHA | Export   |
| 13      | no  | EXP-RC4-MD5         | Export   |
| 14      | no  | EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5     | Export   |
| 15      | no  | EXP-DES-CBC-SHA     | Export   |
| 16      | no  | AES128-SHA          | Medium   |
| 17      | no  | AES256-SHA          | High     |

Select cipher numbers to use, separated by commas: 1,3,4  
ok

2. (Optional) View the results. Notice the change in the Use column.

```
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client default) view
SSL-Client Name Keyring Name Protocol
----- ----- -----
default default SSLv2v3TLSv1

| Cipher# | Use | Description | Strength |
|---------|-----|---------------------|----------|
| 1 | yes | RC4-MD5 | Medium |
| 2 | no | RC4-SHA | Medium |
| 3 | yes | DES-CBC3-SHA | High |
| 4 | yes | DES-CBC3-MD5 | High |
| 5 | no | RC2-CBC-MD5 | Medium |
| 6 | no | RC4-64-MD5 | Low |
| 7 | no | DES-CBC-SHA | Low |
| 8 | no | DES-CBC-MD5 | Low |
| 9 | no | EXP1024-RC4-MD5 | Export |
| 10 | no | EXP1024-RC4-SHA | Export |
| 11 | no | EXP1024-RC2-CBC-MD5 | Export |
| 12 | no | EXP1024-DES-CBC-SHA | Export |
| 13 | no | EXP-RC4-MD5 | Export |
| 14 | no | EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5 | Export |
| 15 | no | EXP-DES-CBC-SHA | Export |
| 16 | no | AES128-SHA | Medium |
| 17 | no | AES256-SHA | High |


```

#### To change the cipher suites non-interactively:

Enter the following commands:

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ssl-client default
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client default) cipher-suite cipher-suite cipher-
suite
```

where [cipher-suite] can be any combination of the following:

1. rc4-md5
2. rc4-sha
3. des-cbc3-sha
4. des-cbc3-md5
5. rc2-cbc-md5
6. rc4-64-md5
7. des-cbc-sha
8. des-cbc-md5
9. exp1024-rc4-md5
10. exp1024-rc4-sha
11. exp1024-rc2-cbc-md5
12. exp1024-des-cbc-sha
13. exp-rc4-md5
14. exp-rc2-cbc-md5
15. exp-des-cbc-sha
16. aes128-sha
17. aes256-sha

Notes:

- If you do not specify any attributes, the interactive mode is assumed and the cipher suites cannot be used by Director in profiles or overlays.
- Multiple cipher suites can be specified on the command line.

#### *Example*

```
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client default) cipher-suite rc4-md5 des-cbc3-md5
exp1024-rc4-md5 exp-des-cbc-sha
ok
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client default) view
SSL-Client Name Keyring Name Protocol
----- ----- -----
default default SSLv2v3TLSv1

Cipher# Use Description Strength
----- --- ----- -----
1 no RC4-MD5 Medium
2 no RC4-SHA Medium
3 no DES-CBC3-SHA High
4 no DES-CBC3-MD5 High
5 no RC2-CBC-MD5 Medium
6 no RC4-64-MD5 Low
7 no DES-CBC-SHA Low
8 no DES-CBC-MD5 Low
9 no EXP1024-RC4-MD5 Export
10 no EXP1024-RC4-SHA Export
11 no EXP1024-RC2-CBC-MD5 Export
12 no EXP1024-DES-CBC-SHA Export
13 no EXP-RC4-MD5 Export
14 no EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5 Export
15 yes EXP-DES-CBC-SHA Export
16 no AES128-SHA Medium
17 no AES256-SHA High
```

## *Troubleshooting Server Certificate Verification*

Server certificate verification can be disabled for all upstream hosts or specific upstream hosts. The SG, by default, verifies the SSL certificate presented by the upstream HTTPS server. However, it fails to negotiate the SSL connection if SSL certificate verification fails.

The two most common causes of server certificate verification failure are:

- ❑ The absence of a suitable CA certificate on the SG. Be sure that the SG is configured with the relevant CA certificates to avoid unwanted verification failures.
- ❑ If a forwarding host of type HTTPS server is being used, you can override the default behavior by changing the `ssl-verify-server` option on a per-host basis.
- ❑ The server is using a self-signed certificate. In this case, you need to change the keyring to one that has a CA certificate.

## *Setting the SSL Negotiation Timeout*

The SSL negotiation timeout value dictates the time a SG waits for a new SSL handshake to complete. This value applies to both the HTTPS Reverse Proxy and SSL origination.

You can change the default SSL negotiation timeout value if the default, 300 seconds, is not sufficient for your environment. This value can only be changed through the CLI; it cannot be set from the Management Console.

To change the HTTPS Reverse Proxy timeout period, enter the follow commands from the command prompt:

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) view ssl-nego-timeout
300
SGOS#(config ssl) ssl-nego-timeout seconds
```



## *Appendix D: XML Protocol*

The XML realm uses a SOAP 1.2 based protocol for the Blue Coat supported protocol. A schema has been placed at <http://www.bluecoat.com/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0>.

This appendix includes the following sections:

- [Section A: "Authenticate Request" on page 240](#)
- [Section B: "Authenticate Response" on page 242](#)
- [Section C: "Authorize Request" on page 244](#)
- [Section D: "Authorize Response" on page 245](#)

## Section A: Authenticate Request

---

### Section A: Authenticate Request

#### GET Method (User Credentials in Request)

If the user credentials are not set in the HTTP headers, the username and password are added to the query. The name of the username parameter is configured in the realm. The groups and attributes of interest are only included if the realm is configured to include them.

```
http://<server hostname>:<server port>/<authenticate service path>?<username parameter name>=<username>&password=<password> [&group=<group 1>&group=<group 2>...&attribute=<attribute 1>&attribute=<attribute 2>]
```

#### GET Method (User Credentials in Headers)

If the user credentials are in the HTTP headers, the password is not added to the query.

```
http://<server hostname>:<server port>/<authenticate service path>/
authenticate?<username parameter name>=<username> [&group=<group 1>&group=<group 2>...&attribute=<attribute 1>&attribute=<attribute 2>]
```

#### POST Method (User Credentials in Request)

The parameter name of the username is configured in the realm. The groups and attributes of interest will only be included if the realm is configured to include them.

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<env:Envelope
xmlns:env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
 <env:Body env:encodingStyle="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-encoding"
 xmlns:enc="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-encoding">
 <m:authenticate
 xmlns:m="http://www.bluecoat.com/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0">
 <m:username>Username</m:username>
 <m:password>password</m:password>
 <m:groups enc:arraySize="*" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:group>group1</m:group>
 <m:group>group2</m:group>
 </m:groups>
 <m:attributes enc:arraySize="*" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:attribute>attribute1</m:attribute>
 <m:attribute>attribute2</m:attribute>
 </m:attributes>
 </m:authenticate>
 </env:Body>
 </env:Envelope>
```

#### POST Method (User Credentials in Headers)

If the user credentials are in the HTTP headers, the password is not added to the request.

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<env:Envelope
xmlns:env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
 <env:Body
 env:encodingStyle="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-encoding">
 <m:authenticate
 xmlns:m="http://www.bluecoat.com/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0">
```

## Section A: Authenticate Request

---

```
<m:username>Username</m:username>
<m:challenge-state>challenge state</m:challenge-state>
<m:groups enc:arraySize="*" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:group>group1</m:group>
 <m:group>group2</m:group>
</m:groups>
<m:attributes enc:arraySize="*" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:attribute>attribute1</m:attribute>
 <m:attribute>attribute2</m:attribute>
</m:attributes>
</m:authenticate>
</env:Body>
</env:Envelope>
```

## Section B: Authenticate Response

---

### Section B: Authenticate Response

#### Success

All of the response fields except "full-username" are optional. The intersection of the groups of interest and the groups that the user is in are returned in the groups element. The attributes of interest for the user are returned in a flattened two dimensional array of attribute names and values.

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<env:Envelope
 xmlns:env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
 <env:Body
 env:encodingStyle="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-encoding">
 <m:authenticate-response
 xmlns:m="http://www.bluecoat.com/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0">
 <m:full-username>full-username</m:full-username>
 <m:groups enc:arraySize="*" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:group>group2</m:group>
 </m:groups>
 <m:attribute-values enc:arraySize="* 2" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:item>attribute2</m:item>
 <m:item>value2a</m:item>
 <m:item>attribute2</m:item>
 <m:item>value2b</m:item>
 <m:item>attribute2</m:item>
 <m:item>value2c</m:item>
 </m:attribute-values>
 </m:authenticate-response>
 </env:Body>
 </env:Envelope>
```

#### Failed/Denied

The failed response includes a text description of the failure that becomes the text description of the error reported to the user. The fault-code is one of a set of SGOS authentication errors that can be returned from the responder. The codes are returned as strings, but are part of an enumeration declared in the schema for the protocol. Only codes in this list are acceptable.

```
account_disabled
account_restricted
credentials_mismatch
general_authentication_error
expired_credentials
account_locked_out
account_must_change_password
offbox_server_down
general_authorization_error
unknown_error

<?xml version='1.0' encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<env:Envelope
 xmlns:env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
 <env:Body>
 <env:Fault>
 <env:Code>
 <env:Value>env:Sender</env:Value>
```

Section B: Authenticate Response

---

```
</env:Code>
<env:Reason>
 <env:Text xml:lang="en-US">Bad username or password</env:Text>
</env:Reason>
<env:Detail>
 <e:realm-fault
 xmlns:e="http://www.bluecoat.com/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0">
 <e:fault-code>general_authentication_error</e:fault-code>
 <e:realm-fault>
 <env:Detail>
 <env:Fault>
 </env:Body>
 </env:Envelope>
```

## Section C: Authorize Request

---

### Section C: Authorize Request

The groups and attributes of interest for the user are embedded in the request if they are configured to be included. The XML responder must not require credentials for authorization requests.

#### GET Method

```
http://<server hostname>:<server port>/<authorize service path>?<username parameter name>=<username> [&group=<group1>&group=<group2>...&attribute=<attribute1>&...]
```

#### POST Method

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<env:Envelope
 xmlns:env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
 <env:Body
 env:encodingStyle="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-encoding"
 xmlns:enc="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-encoding">
 <m:authorize
 xmlns:m="http://www.bluecoat.com/soap/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0">
 <m:username>Username</m:username>
 <m:groups enc:arraySize="*" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:group>group1</m:group>
 <m:group>group2</m:group>
 </m:groups>
 <m:attributes enc:arraySize="*" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:attribute>attribute1</m:attribute>
 <m:attribute>attribute2</m:attribute>
 </m:attributes>
 </m:authorize>
 </env:Body>
 </env:Envelope>
```

Section D: Authorize Response

---

## Section D: Authorize Response

### Success

Only applicable groups and attributes are returned. Multi-valued attributes are returned by multiple instances of the same attribute name.

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<env:Envelope
 xmlns:env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
 <env:Body
 env:encodingStyle="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-encoding"
 xmlns:enc="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-encoding">
 <m:authorize-response
 xmlns:m="http://www.bluecoat.com/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0">
 <m:groups enc:arraySize="*" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:group>group2</m:group>
 </m:groups>
 <m:attribute-values enc:arraySize="* 2" enc:itemType="xsd:string">
 <m:item>attribute2</m:item>
 <m:item>value2a</m:item>
 <m:item>attribute2</m:item>
 <m:item>value2b</m:item>
 <m:item>attribute2</m:item>
 <m:item>value2c</m:item>
 </m:attribute-values>
 </m:authorize>
 </env:Body>
 </env:Envelope>
```

### Failed

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<env:Envelope
 xmlns:env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
 <env:Body>
 <env:Fault>
 <env:Code>
 <env:Value>env:Receiver</env:Value>
 </env:Code>
 <env:Reason>
 <env:Text xml:lang="en-US">Could not contact LDAP server</env:Text>
 </env:Reason>
 <env:Detail>
 <e:realm-fault
 xmlns:e="http://www.bluecoat.com/xmlns/xml-realm/1.0">
 <e:fault-code>offbox_server_down</e:fault-code>
 <e:realm-fault>
 <env:Detail>
 <env:Fault>
 </env:Body>
 </env:Envelope>
```

**Section D: Authorize Response**

---

## Appendix E: Authentication and Authorization Errors

Following is the list of all groups and individual errors that can be permitted during authentication and authorization. The first table lists the groups and the individual errors within each group. The second table lists all of the individual errors along with descriptions of the errors.

Table E-1. Groups and Individual Errors

| Error Group | CPL | Members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| All         | All | account_disabled<br>account_expired<br>account_locked_out<br>account_must_change_password<br>account_restricted<br>account_wrong_place<br>account_wrong_time<br>agent_config_changed<br>agent_config_cmd_failed<br>agent_connection_failed<br>agent_init_failed<br>agent_no_groups_provided<br>agent_resource_not_protected<br>agent_too_many_retries<br>agent_unsupported_scheme<br>authorization_username_too_long<br><br>basic_password_too_long<br>basic_username_too_long<br><br>cannot_decrypt_secret<br>cannot_determine_authorization_username<br>cannot_determine_full_username<br>cannot_determine_username<br>cannot_expand_credentials_substitution<br>cannot_redirect_connect<br>cannot_redirect_https_to_http<br>cannot_setup_working_dir<br>cert_explicit_unsupported<br>certificate_missing<br>credential_decode_failure<br>credentials_mismatch | Includes all errors that can be permitted. Note that this group includes errors such as need_credentials which if permitted will result in the user never being challenged. As this is not the desired behavior for most realms (i.e. the user should be given the chance to enter credentials) do not permit this group when using challenge realms. Instead, use combinations of the other error groups as appropriate. |

Table E-1. Groups and Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Group | CPL | Members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Description |
|-------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
|             |     | domain_controller_query_disabled<br>expired_credentials<br>form_does_not_support_connect<br>form_requires_basic_support<br>general_authentication_error<br>general_authorization_error<br>guest_user<br>invalid_ip<br>invalid_license<br>invalid_local_user_list<br>invalid_realm<br>invalid_search_credentials<br>invalid_surrogate<br>issuer_too_long<br>ldap_busy<br>ldap_filter_error<br>ldap_inappropriate_auth<br>ldap_insufficient_access<br>ldap_invalid_credentials<br>ldap_invalid_dn_syntax<br>ldap_loop_detect<br>ldap_no_such_attribute<br>ldap_no_such_object<br>ldap_partial_results<br>ldap_server_down<br>ldap_timelimit_exceeded<br>ldap_timeout<br>ldap_unavailable<br>ldap_unwilling_to_perform<br>missing_base_dn<br>missing_form_configuration<br>multiple_users_matched<br>need_credentials<br>netbios_failure<br>netbios_cannot_send<br>netbios_multiple_users<br>netbios_no_computer_name<br>netbios_no_domain_name<br>netbios_no_user_name<br>netbios_recv_failed<br>netbios_reply_invalid<br>netbios_reply_timeout<br>no_offbox_url_specified<br>no_servers<br>no_user_in_cert<br>not_attempted<br>not_ssl<br>offbox_abort<br>offbox_missing_secret<br>offbox_process_create_failed<br>offbox_protocol_error<br>offbox_server_down |             |

Table E-1. Groups and Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Group                           | CPL                            | Members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                       |                                | offbox_server_unreachable<br>offbox_timeout<br>otp_already_used<br>password_too_long<br>radius_socket_interface<br>rdns_cannot_determine_name<br>rdns_failed<br>redirect_from_vh<br>sspi_context_lost<br>sspi_context_too_old<br>sspi_domain_controller_not_found<br>sspi_invalid_handle<br>sspi_invalid_mechanism<br>sspi_invalid_token<br>sspi_invalid_type3_message<br>sspi_logon_denied<br>sspi_logon_type_not_granted<br>sspi_no_authenticating_authority<br>sspi_null_lm_password<br>sspi_process_create_failed<br>sspi_rpc_error<br>sspi_service_disabled<br>sspi_timeout<br>sspi_unable_to_connect_to_agent<br>subject_too_long<br>too_many_users<br>unable_to_query_client<br>unknown_user<br>user_domain_not_trusted<br>username_too_long |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Communication Error</b>            | communication_error            | agent_connection_failed<br>ldap_busy<br>ldap_loop_detect<br>ldap_server_down<br>ldap_unavailable<br>ldap_unwilling_to_perform<br>netbios_cannot_send<br>netbios_reply_invalid<br>no_servers<br>radius_socket_interface<br>sspi_no_authenticating_authority<br>sspi_rpc_error<br>sspi_unable_to_connect_to_agent                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Includes communication errors with BCAAA, LDAP, and RADIUS servers and during NetBIOS queries.                                                     |
| <b>Configuration Changed</b>          | configuration_changed          | agent_config_changed<br>offbox_abort                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | The SG has been notified that configuration affecting the realm has been changed offbox. Used primarily with SiteMinder and COREid realms.         |
| <b>General Authentication Failure</b> | general_authentication_failure | general_authentication_error                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | A general authentication error has occurred. This is returned when a specific error does not apply. It does not include all authentication errors. |

Table E-1. Groups and Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Group                          | CPL                           | Members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>General Authorization Failure</b> | general_authorization_failure | cannot_determine_authorization_username<br>general_authorization_error                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | A general authorization error has occurred. This is returned when a specific error does not apply. It does not include all authorization errors. This can be returned as an authentication error in realms that do not support specifying a separate authorization realm. |
| <b>General Offbox Error</b>          | offbox_error                  | agent_connection_failed<br>agent_init_failed<br>cannot_determine_full_username<br>ldap_busy<br>ldap_loop_detect<br>ldap_server_down<br>ldap_timelimit_exceeded<br>ldap_timeout<br>ldap_unavailable<br>ldap_unwilling_to_perform<br>netbios_failure<br>netbios_CANNOT_send<br>netbios_multiple_users<br>netbios_no_computer_name<br>netbios_no_domain_name<br>netbios_no_user_name<br>netbios_recv_failed<br>netbios_reply_invalid<br>netbios_reply_timeout<br>no_servers<br>offbox_process_create_failed<br>offbox_protocol_error<br>offbox_server_down<br>offbox_server_unreachable<br>offbox_timeout<br>radius_socket_interface<br>rdns_cannot_determine_name<br>rdns_failed<br>sspi_context_lost<br>sspi_context_too_old<br>sspi_invalid_mechanism<br>sspi_no_authenticating_authority<br>sspi_process_create_failed<br>sspi_rpc_error<br>sspi_timeout<br>sspi_unable_to_connect_to_agent | Includes all errors that can result with failures found during any offbox configuration or communications. It includes all errors found in the Communication Error group.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Ident Error</b>                   | ident_error                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Errors found during Ident query                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Initialization Error</b>          | initialization_error          | agent_init_failed<br>offbox_process_create_failed<br>sspi_process_create_failed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Errors related to initializing the realm.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Internal Error</b>                | internal_error                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Any internal error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Invalid BCAA Request</b>          | invalid_bcaaa_request         | sspi_context_lost<br>sspi_context_too_old<br>sspi_invalid_mechanism                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Includes errors returned if the request sent to BCAA is invalid. Applies to IWA realms only.                                                                                                                                                                              |

Table E-1. Groups and Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Group                  | CPL                   | Members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Invalid Configuration</b> | invalid_configuration | agent_config_cmd_failed<br>agent_no_groups_provided<br>agent_resource_not_protected<br>agent_too_many_retries<br>agent_unsupported_scheme<br>cannot_decrypt_secret<br>cannot_determine_full_username<br>cannot_determine_username<br>cannot_setup_working_dir<br>cert_explicit_unsupported<br>domain_controller_query_disabled<br>form_does_not_support_connect<br>form_requires_basic_support<br>invalid_local_user_list<br>invalid_realm<br>invalid_search_credentials<br>ldap_filter_error<br>ldap_inappropriate_auth<br>ldap_insufficient_access<br>ldap_invalid_dn_syntax<br>ldap_no_such_attribute<br>ldap_no_such_object<br>ldap_partial_results<br>missing_base_dn<br>missing_form_configuration<br>no_offbox_url_specified<br>no_servers<br>not_ssl<br>offbox_missing_secret<br>offbox_protocol_error<br>offbox_server_unreachable<br>sspi_domain_controller_not_found<br>sspi_logon_type_not_granted<br>sspi_null_lm_password<br>sspi_service_disabled | Includes any errors that resulted from a possible misconfiguration of the SG. These errors usually require administrator action to address. |
| <b>Invalid License</b>       | invalid_license       | invalid_license                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | An invalid license was found for an authentication component.                                                                               |
| <b>Invalid NetBIOS Reply</b> | invalid_netbios_reply | netbios_failure<br>netbios_multiple_users<br>netbios_no_computer_name<br>netbios_no_domain_name<br>netbios_no_user_name<br>netbios_recv_failed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | The NetBIOS reply was invalid.                                                                                                              |

Table E-1. Groups and Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Group                     | CPL                | Members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Invalid User Information</b> | invalid_user_info  | authorization_username_too_long<br>basic_password_too_long<br>basic_username_too_long<br>cannot_expand_credentials_substitution<br>credential_decode_failure<br>credentials_mismatch<br>general_authentication_error<br>invalid_surrogate<br>issuer_too_long<br>ldap_invalid_credentials<br>otp_already_used<br>password_too_long<br>sspi_invalid_handle<br>sspi_invalid_token<br>sspi_invalid_type3_message<br>sspi_logon_denied<br>subject_too_long<br>user_domain_not_trusted<br>username_too_long | Includes errors that result from invalid user information being entered.                                                                  |
| <b>RDNS Failure</b>             | rdns_failure       | rdns_cannot_determine_name<br>rdns_failed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Errors found during Reverse DNS lookup.                                                                                                   |
| <b>Redirect Error</b>           | redirect_error     | cannot_redirect_connect<br>cannot_redirect_https_to_http<br>redirect_from_vh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Errors found while attempting to redirect the user's request for authentication. Only returned when using a redirect authentication mode. |
| <b>Request Timeout</b>          | request_timeout    | ldap_timelimit_exceeded<br>ldap_timeout<br>netbios_reply_timeout<br>offbox_timeout<br>sspi_timeout                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Includes timeout errors with authentication servers.                                                                                      |
| <b>Single Sign-on Failure</b>   | sso_failure        | invalid_ip<br>multiple_users_matched<br>too_many_users<br>unknown_user<br>unable_to_query_client                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Errors returned during Single Sign-on authentication. These errors apply to Windows SSO and Novell SSO realms only.                       |
| <b>User Account Error</b>       | user_account_error | account_disabled<br>account_expired<br>account_locked_out<br>account_must_change_password<br>account_restricted<br>account_wrong_place<br>account_wrong_time<br>expired_credentials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Errors with the user's account.                                                                                                           |

Table E-1. Groups and Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Group               | CPL                  | Members                                                                  | Description                                                                                               |
|---------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| User Credentials Required | credentials_required | certificate_missing<br>guest_user<br>need_credentials<br>no_user_in_cert | User credentials are required. Do not permit this error if the user should be challenged for credentials. |

Table E-2. Individual Errors

| Error Name                      | Description                                                                    | Groups                                        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| account_disabled                | Account is disabled.                                                           | All User Account Error                        |
| account_expired                 | Account has expired.                                                           | All User Account Error                        |
| account_locked_out              | Account is locked out.                                                         | All User Account Error                        |
| account_must_change_password    | Account password must be changed.                                              | All User Account Error                        |
| account_restricted              | Account is restricted.                                                         | All User Account Error                        |
| account_wrong_place             | Account cannot be used from this location.                                     | All User Account Error                        |
| account_wrong_time              | Account logon time restricted - cannot be used now.                            | All User Account Error                        |
| agent_config_changed            | Agent reports server configuration has changed; please try your request again. | All Configuration Changed                     |
| agent_config_cmd_failed         | Configuration of the authentication agent failed                               | All Invalid Configuration                     |
| agent_connection_failed         | The authentication agent could not communicate with its authority.             | All Communication Error General Offbox Error  |
| agent_init_failed               | The authentication agent failed to initialize.                                 | All Initialization Error General Offbox Error |
| agent_no_groups_provided        | The authentication agent did not receive the group list from the server.       | All Invalid Configuration                     |
| agent_resource_not_protected    | The authentication agent reports that the resource is not protected.           | All Invalid Configuration                     |
| agent_too_many_retries          | Agent configuration failed.                                                    | All Invalid Configuration                     |
| agent_unsupported_scheme        | The requested authentication scheme is not supported.                          | All Invalid Configuration                     |
| authorization_username_too_long | The resolved authorization username is too long.                               | All Invalid User Information                  |
| basic_password_too_long         | Basic password is too long.                                                    | All Invalid User Information                  |
| basic_username_too_long         | Basic username is too long.                                                    | All Invalid User Information                  |

Table E-2. Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Name                               | Description                                                                                  | Groups                                                            |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cannot_decrypt_secret                    | Cannot decrypt shared secret.                                                                | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                      |
| cannot_determine_authorization_user_name | Could not determine the authorization username.                                              | All<br>General Authorization Failure                              |
| cannot_determine_full_username           | Could not determine full user name.                                                          | All<br>Invalid Configuration<br>General Offbox Error              |
| cannot_determine_username                | Agent could not determine simple user name.                                                  | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                      |
| cannot_expand_credentials_substitution   | The substitution used to determine the credentials could not be expanded.                    | All<br>Invalid User Information                                   |
| cannot_redirect_connect                  | Cannot use origin-redirect or form-redirect for CONNECT method (explicit proxy of https URL) | All<br>Redirect Error                                             |
| cannot_redirect_https_to_http            | Cannot redirect an HTTPS request to an HTTP virtual URL                                      | All<br>Redirect Error                                             |
| cannot_setup_working_dir                 | Unable to setup working directory for COREid AccessGate                                      | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                      |
| cert_explicit_unsupported                | Certificate authentication not supported for explicit proxy.                                 | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                      |
| certificate_missing                      | No certificate found. Check that verify-client is set on https service.                      | All<br>User Credentials Required                                  |
| credential_decode_failure                | Unable to decode base64 credentials.                                                         | All<br>Invalid User Information                                   |
| credentials_mismatch                     | Credentials did not match.                                                                   | All<br>Invalid User Information                                   |
| domain_controller_query_disabled         | Windows SSO Domain Controller Querying is not enabled on the Single Sign-on agent.           | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                      |
| expired_credentials                      | Credentials on back-end server have expired.                                                 | All<br>User Account Error                                         |
| form_does_not_support_connect            | Cannot use form authentication for CONNECT method (explicit proxy of https URL)              | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                      |
| form_requires_basic_support              | Form authentication requires the realm to support Basic credentials.                         | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                      |
| general_authentication_error             | General authentication failure due to bad user ID or authentication token.                   | All<br>General Authentication Failure<br>Invalid User Information |
| general_authorization_error              | Unable to authorize authenticated user.                                                      | All<br>General Authorization Failure                              |
| guest_user                               | Credentials required.                                                                        | All<br>User Credentials Required                                  |
| invalid_ip                               | The IP address of this computer could not be determined by the Single Sign-on agent.         | All<br>Single Sign-on Failure                                     |

Table E-2. Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Name                 | Description                                                                                           | Groups                                             |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| invalid_license            | The license for the configured realm does not exist or is invalid. A valid license must be installed. | All<br>Invalid License                             |
| invalid_local_user_list    | Invalid local user list.                                                                              | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| invalid_realm              | The specified realm is invalid.                                                                       | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| invalid_search_credentials | The LDAP search credentials are invalid.                                                              | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| invalid_surrogate          | The surrogate is invalid for the specified realm.                                                     | All<br>Invalid User Information                    |
| issuer_too_long            | Certificate's issuer string is too long.                                                              | All<br>Invalid User Information                    |
| ldap_busy                  | LDAP: server busy.                                                                                    | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error |
| ldap_filter_error          | LDAP: filter error.                                                                                   | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| ldap_inappropriate_auth    | LDAP: inappropriate authentication.                                                                   | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| ldap_insufficient_access   | LDAP: insufficient access.                                                                            | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| ldap_invalid_credentials   | LDAP: invalid credentials.                                                                            | All<br>Invalid User Information                    |
| ldap_invalid_dn_syntax     | LDAP: invalid DN syntax.                                                                              | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| ldap_loop_detect           | LDAP: loop detected.                                                                                  | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error |
| ldap_no_such_attribute     | LDAP: No such attribute.                                                                              | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| ldap_no_such_object        | LDAP: no such object.                                                                                 | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| ldap_partial_results       | LDAP server returned partial results.                                                                 | All<br>Invalid Configuration                       |
| ldap_server_down           | Could not connect to LDAP server.                                                                     | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error |
| ldap_timelimit_exceeded    | LDAP server exceeded time limit.                                                                      | All<br>Request Timeout<br>General Offbox Error     |
| ldap_timeout               | The LDAP request timed out.                                                                           | All<br>Request Timeout<br>General Offbox Error     |
| ldap_unavailable           | LDAP: service unavailable.                                                                            | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error |

Table E-2. Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Name                 | Description                                                                       | Groups                                                                      |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ldap_unwilling_to_perform  | LDAP: server unwilling to perform requested action.                               | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error                          |
| missing_base_dn            | No base DNs are configured.                                                       | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                                |
| missing_form_configuration | Form authentication is not properly configured                                    | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                                |
| multiple_users_matched     | The user query resulted in multiple users. A unique user could not be determined. | All<br>Single Sign-on Failure                                               |
| need_credentials           | Credentials are missing.                                                          | All<br>User Credentials Required                                            |
| netbios_failure            | NetBIOS reply did not contain data needed for authentication.                     | All<br>Invalid NetBIOS Reply<br>General Offbox Error                        |
| netbios_CANNOT_send        | Could not send NetBIOS query.                                                     | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error                          |
| netbios_multiple_users     | NetBIOS reply contained multiple user names.                                      | All<br>Invalid NetBIOS Reply<br>General Offbox Error                        |
| netbios_no_computer_name   | Could not determine computer name from NetBIOS reply.                             | All<br>Invalid NetBIOS Reply<br>General Offbox Error                        |
| netbios_no_domain_name     | Could not determine domain name from NetBIOS reply.                               | All<br>Invalid NetBIOS Reply<br>General Offbox Error                        |
| netbios_no_user_name       | NetBIOS reply did not contain the user name.                                      | All<br>Invalid NetBIOS Reply<br>General Offbox Error                        |
| netbios_recv_failed        | Failed to receive reply to NetBIOS query.                                         | All<br>Invalid NetBIOS Reply<br>General Offbox Error                        |
| netbios_reply_invalid      | Reply to NetBIOS query was invalid.                                               | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error                          |
| netbios_reply_timeout      | Timed out awaiting reply to NetBIOS query.                                        | All<br>Request Timeout<br>General Offbox Error                              |
| no_offbox_url_specified    | Off-box redirects are configured but no off-box URL is specified.                 | All<br>Invalid Configuration                                                |
| no_servers                 | No usable authentication servers found.                                           | All<br>Communication Error<br>Invalid Configuration<br>General Offbox Error |
| no_user_in_cert            | Could not retrieve username from certificate.                                     | All<br>User Credentials Required                                            |

Table E-2. Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Name                       | Description                                                                                           | Groups                                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| none                             | Status successful.                                                                                    |                                                      |
| not_attempted                    | The method has not been attempted.                                                                    | All                                                  |
| not_ssl                          | SSL is required but connection is not using it (check virtual-url).                                   | All<br>Invalid Configuration                         |
| offbox_abort                     | The request was aborted due to a change in configuration.                                             | All<br>Configuration Changed                         |
| offbox_missing_secret            | Secret is not defined for authentication realm                                                        | All<br>Invalid Configuration                         |
| offbox_process_create_failed     | Could not create offbox authentication processes                                                      | All<br>Initialization Error<br>General Offbox Error  |
| offbox_protocol_error            | The authentication server returned an invalid result.                                                 | All<br>Invalid Configuration<br>General Offbox Error |
| offbox_server_down               | The authentication server cannot process requests.                                                    | All<br>General Offbox Error                          |
| offbox_server_unreachable        | The authentication server could not be contacted.                                                     | All<br>Invalid Configuration<br>General Offbox Error |
| offbox_timeout                   | The request timed out while trying to authenticate. The authentication server may be busy or offline. | All<br>Request Timeout<br>General Offbox Error       |
| otp_already_used                 | The one-time password has already been used                                                           | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |
| password_too_long                | Password is too long.                                                                                 | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |
| radius_socket_interface          | RADIUS received an unexpected socket error.                                                           | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error   |
| rdns_cannot_determine_name       | Could not determine user name from client host name.                                                  | All<br>RDNS Failure<br>General Offbox Error          |
| rdns_failed                      | Reverse DNS address resolution failed.                                                                | All<br>RDNS Failure<br>General Offbox Error          |
| redirect_from_vh                 | Redirecting from the virtual host.                                                                    | All<br>Redirect Error                                |
| sspi_context_lost                | Authentication agent rejected request (context lost).                                                 | All<br>Invalid BCAAA Request<br>General Offbox Error |
| sspi_context_too_old             | Authentication agent rejected request - too old.                                                      | All<br>Invalid BCAAA Request<br>General Offbox Error |
| sspi_domain_controller_not_found | Cannot find domain controller.                                                                        | All<br>Invalid Configuration                         |
| sspi_invalid_handle              | SSPI protocol error - invalid context handle.                                                         | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |

Table E-2. Individual Errors (Continued)

| Error Name                       | Description                                                                                                        | Groups                                               |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| sspi_invalid_mechanism           | Authentication agent rejected request - Invalid mechanism requested.                                               | All<br>Invalid BCAAA Request<br>General Offbox Error |
| sspi_invalid_token               | The credentials provided are invalid.                                                                              | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |
| sspi_invalid_type3_message       | Client sent invalid NTLM Type 3 message.                                                                           | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |
| sspi_logon_denied                | The logon failed.                                                                                                  | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |
| sspi_logon_type_not_granted      | Requested logon type not granted.                                                                                  | All<br>Invalid Configuration                         |
| sspi_no_authenticating_authority | No authority could be contacted for authentication.                                                                | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error   |
| sspi_null_lm_password            | Windows NT password too complex for LanMan.                                                                        | All<br>Invalid Configuration                         |
| sspi_process_create_failed       | NTLM realm could not create administrator processes.                                                               | All<br>Initialization Error<br>General Offbox Error  |
| sspi_rpc_error                   | Connection to authentication agent lost.                                                                           | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error   |
| sspi_service_disabled            | SSPI service disabled.                                                                                             | All<br>Invalid Configuration                         |
| sspi_timeout                     | Authentication agent did not respond to request in time.                                                           | All<br>Request Timeout<br>General Offbox Error       |
| sspi_unable_to_connect_to_agent  | Unable to connect to authentication agent.                                                                         | All<br>Communication Error<br>General Offbox Error   |
| subject_too_long                 | Certificate's subject string is too long.                                                                          | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |
| too_many_users                   | More than one user is logged onto this computer. Only one user can be logged on for Single Sign-on authentication. | All<br>Single Sign-on Failure                        |
| unable_to_query_client           | The client workstation could not be queried by the Single Sign-on agent.                                           | All<br>Single Sign-on Failure                        |
| unknown_user                     | The user could not be determined by the Single Sign-on agent.                                                      | All<br>Single Sign-on Failure                        |
| user_domain_not_trusted          | The specified domain is not trusted.                                                                               | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |
| username_too_long                | Specified username is too long.                                                                                    | All<br>Invalid User Information                      |

# Index

## A

access control list

    creating 19, 27

    restricting access with 19

access logs

    digital signing

        overview 66

access restrictions

    access control list for 19

    configuring 19

Admin layer

    example 24

administrator

    defining policies 20

    security levels 17

ADN

    realms, using with 141, 172, 190

Application Delivery Network (ADN)

    Novell SSO realms, using with 141, 172, 190

    policy substitution realms, using with 141, 172, 190

    realm authentication, configuring policy 141, 172, 190

    reflect ip address attribute, using 141, 172, 190

    Windows SSO realms, using with 141, 172, 190

authenticate.mode, IWA, realm setting for 34

authentication

    configuring transparent proxy authentication 35

    definition of 11

    guest 38

    LDAP realm 109

    permitted errors, understanding 37

    policies 11, 15

    setting options for transparent proxy authentication 35, 36

authentication realm

    typical configuration 12

authorization

    definition of 11

    LDAP realm 109

    policies 11, 15, 55

authorization refresh time, discussed 29

## B

BCAAA

    COREid realm, using with 82

    event log, viewing 221

    event messages 225

    installation folder, selecting 217

    Service Principal Names, creating 223

    services, viewing 221

    SSL, using with pre-Windows 2003 222

    SSL, using with Windows 2003 and higher 222

    troubleshooting 225

    WIDMS, configuring for 146

Blue Coat SG

    read-only and read-write access 17

    restricting access to 19

## C

CA Certificates

    certificate signing request

        creating 59, 60

        error message 61

    lists

        creating through CLI 71

        creating through Management Console 70

    managing 60

    troubleshooting 61

CAASNT, see BCAA

certificate realm

    authentication and authorization overview 73

    configuring authentication and authorization 73

    defining properties 74

    defining realm server properties 74

    how it works 73

    LDAP authorization, adding 74

    local authorization, adding 74

    overview 73

    policies, creating 77

    requirements 73

Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs)

    configuring 63

    PEM encoded/DER format 63

    using 62

certificate signing request

    creating 59

- Certificate Signing Request, viewing 60  
certificates  
    chaining, about 69  
    commands  
        creating certificate 60  
    creating 61  
    CSA  
        importing 69  
    explained 52  
    importing 68  
    importing existing 67  
    self-signed  
        creating 62  
    troubleshooting 64  
challenge type, explained 32  
cipher suites  
    interactive mode, using 234  
    International Step-Up, working with 54  
    non-interactive mode, using 235  
    Server Gated Cryptography, working with 54  
SGOS, supported by 53  
client map, *see* SSL client  
CONNECT method, using with origin-style  
    redirection 35  
console account  
    minimum security 17  
cookie surrogates, refresh time, discussed 30  
COREid realm  
    Access Server  
        specifying 83  
    agents, configuring 82  
    Blue Coat appliance  
        challenges, avoiding 81  
        configuring 80  
    configuration overview 79  
    CPL, creating 86  
    creating 82  
    forward proxy, using with 81  
    general settings  
        configuring 84  
    general settings, specifying 84  
    SSO scheme, participating in 81  
    system, configuring 79  
CPL  
    Admin layer, example 24  
    certificate realm, policies, creating 77  
    IWA realm policies, creating 107  
    LDAP realm examples 119  
    local realm, creating policies 129  
Netegrity SiteMinder policies, creating 153  
Novell SSO  
    policies, creating 172  
    policy substitution realm, policies, creating 140  
    RADIUS realm policies, creating 160  
    Windows SSO  
        policies, creating 190  
credential refresh time  
    cached usernames, passwords 29  
    discussed 29  
    one-time passwords 29
- D**
- database  
    creating through Blue Coat SG 126  
    local realm, setting up 123  
    viewing all users 127  
default groups  
    policy used with 40  
    understanding 39  
DER-format URLs, CRLs, using with 63  
digital signing, overview 66  
document  
    conventions 13
- E**
- error message, HTTPS Console 64  
event messages, BCAA 225  
explicit proxy  
    policy substitution realm, troubleshooting 179  
external certificates, using with digital signing 66
- F**
- forms-based authentication realm  
    CPL, using with 99  
    creating 96  
    creating, tips 94  
    creating/editing form 95  
    credentials sent in cleartext 100  
    customizing through Blue Coat SG 96  
    installing from local file 96  
    installing from remote URL 96  
    required values 91  
    storage options, setting 97, 98  
    substitutions for 93  
    tips/boundary conditions 100  
    understanding 90  
front panel PIN  
    clearing 15

creating 15

## G

guest authentication

- policy substitutions used with 39
- policy used with 39
- understanding 38

## H

.htpasswd file

- creating password realm database 125
- loading 125
- uploading 125

hashed passwords, using 16

header

- policy substitution realm, using with 140

HTTP server

- XML realms, configuring for 194

HTTPS Console

- certificate error message 64
- troubleshooting certificate problems 64

HTTPS termination

- certificates 52
- configuring 55
- keyring, creating 56

## I

Internet Explorer

- troubleshooting for explicit policy substitution realm 179

- troubleshooting for transparent proxy 179

IP address surrogates, refresh time, discussed 30

IWA realm

- authenticate.mode, setting 34
- configuring authentication and authorization 101
- defining realm server properties 101
- Kerberos, enabling 103
- overview 101
- policies, creating 107
- Service Principal Names, creating 223
- single sign-on, configuring 107

## K

Kerberos. See *IWA*

keyring

- associating with certificate 68
- importing 67
- SSL client, associating 233

## L

LDAP

- policy-substitution realm, adding to 137
- v2/v3 support 109

LDAP realm

- authentication and authorization overview 109
- authorization 114
- case-sensitive configuration 111
- certificate realm, adding to 74
- CPL examples 119
- defining Base DNs 113
- defining realm authorization properties and group information 114
- defining realm server properties 110
- defining server properties 111
- group information 115
- search boundaries 114
- searching multiple base DNs 112
- SSL, enabling 111
- virtual URL, setting up 118

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol, *see LDAP*

local realm

- authentication and authorization overview 121
- certificate realm, adding to 74
- changing properties 121
- CPL, creating policies 129
- creating a realm 121
- database group, creating 126
- database user, creating 126
- database users, viewing 127
- database, creating 123
- database, creating through Blue Coat SG 126
- database, populated 124
- database, setting up 123
- defining realm server properties 121
- deleting groups 128
- deleting users 128
- groups, defined 124
- groups, deleting 128
- hashed passwords 124
- policy substitution realm, adding to 137
- user name, defined 124
- users, deleting 128
- view all lists 127
- virtual URL, setting up 123

local user list

- security settings, changing 128

## N

netbios  
  using with policy substitution realm 139  
Netegrity SiteMinder realm  
  agents, configuring 146  
  case-sensitive configuration 147  
  creating 146  
  display name, changing 150  
  policies, creating 153  
  protected resource, entering 149  
  server mode, configuring 149  
  servers, configuring 147  
  servers, editing 148  
  SSO-only mode, enabling 149  
Novell SSO realms  
  ADN, using with 141, 172, 190  
  authorization, using 164  
  BCAAA, configuring 165  
  creating a realm through CLI 166  
  defining realm server properties 165  
  general properties, configuring 169  
  policies, creating 172  
  sso.ini file, modifying 171  
Novell SSO realms, ADN using with 141, 172, 190  
NTLM realm. *See IWA realm*

## O

one-time passwords  
  XML realms, configuring 195  
Oracle, *See COREid*  
origin-style authentication  
  origin 32  
  origin-cookie 32  
  origin-cookie-redirect 32  
  origin-ip 32  
  origin-ip-redirect 32

## P

passwords  
  hashed, encrypted 16  
  security, understanding 16  
PEM-encoded URLs, CRLs, using with 63  
permitted errors, authentication  
  authentication failures 37  
  authorization failures 37  
  policy used with 37  
policy  
  for maximum security 18  
  for moderate security 17

## policy substitution realm

  configuring 131  
  creating a realm through CLI 134  
  defining properties through Management Console 134  
  defining realm server properties through Management Console 134  
  full usernames, constructing 135  
  general properties, defining through CLI 139  
  general properties, defining through Management Console 138  
  header, using with 140  
  how it works 131  
  LDAP authorization, adding 137  
  local authorization, adding 137  
  netbios, using with 139  
  policies, creating 140  
  troubleshooting 179  
  user, username fields, explained 132  
  usernames, constructing 135  
policy substitution realms  
  ADN, using with 141, 172, 190  
proxies  
  setting up 11

## R

RADIUS realm  
  authentication and authorization overview 155  
  case-sensitive usernames, setting 157  
  defining realm server properties 156  
  policies, creating 160  
  troubleshooting 162  
read-only access in Blue Coat SG 17  
read-write access in Blue Coat SG 17  
realm sequence  
  creating 176  
  promote/demote member realms 177  
realms  
  certificate 73  
  COREid 79  
  forms-based authentication 90  
  IWA 101  
  LDAP 109  
  local 121  
  RADIUS 155  
  sequence 176  
  understanding 11  
requestor. *See XML realms*  
responder *See XML realms*

## S

security  
    console account 17  
    local user list settings, changing 128  
    policies for 17  
sequence realm  
    defining realm server properties 176  
sequences, troubleshooting 175  
serial port  
    password, creating 16  
Service Principal Names, creating for IWA realm 223  
set\_aut.pl script, using with .htpasswd file 125  
setup console  
    password, creating 16  
SiteMinder, *see* Netegrity SiteMinder realm  
SOAP  
    XML realms, using with 193  
SSH  
    password authentication 17  
SSH with RSA authentication, not controlled by  
    policy 20  
SSL  
    authentication/authorization services, using with  
    41  
    caching behavior, SSL client 233  
    cipher suites interactive mode, using 234  
    cipher suites non-interactive mode, using 235  
    LDAP realm, enabling 111  
    no-show keyring option 57  
    show keyring option 57  
    show-director option 57  
    timeout, configuring 237  
SSL certificates, *see* certificates.  
SSL client  
    keyring, associating 233  
    managing 233  
sso.ini, modifying for Novell SSO realms 171  
sso.ini, modifying for Windows SSO realm 188  
surrogate credentials  
    defined 32  
    refresh time, discussed 30

## T

timeout  
    configuring for SSL termination 237  
transparent proxy  
    CLI commands 36  
        policy substitution realm, troubleshooting 179  
    transparent proxy authentication

configuring 35  
setting options for 35, 36  
troubleshooting  
    BCAAA service 225  
    CA Certificates 61  
    CONNECT method 35  
    forms-based authentication realm 100  
    HTTPS Console 64  
    RADIUS realm 162  
    TCP\_DENIED 33

## U

user data  
    policy, refreshing through 30  
    refreshing 28  
users  
    administrator logout 28  
    credential refresh time, discussed 29  
    logged-in, viewing 26  
    logging in 26  
    logging out 27  
    logout conditions 28  
    logout properties 28  
    managing 26  
    policy logout 28  
    timeout 27  
    user data, refreshing 28

## V

virtual URL  
    LDAP realm set up 118

## W

Windows  
    configuring authorization 181  
Windows SSO  
    authorization, configuring 185  
    authorization, using 183  
    BCAAA, configuring 184  
    BCAAA, works with 182  
    creating a realm through CLI 185  
    defining general properties through CLI 188  
    defining realm server properties 183  
    defining realm server properties through  
        Management Console 183  
    general properties, configuring 186  
    how it works 181  
    policies, creating 190  
    sso.ini file, modifying 188

substitutions, available 186

Windows SSO realms

ADN, using with 141, 172, 190

## X

XML realms

authorization, configuring 197

creating 194

HTTP server, configuring 194

one-time passwords, configuring 195

requestor, understanding 193

responder service, configuring 195

responder,

authentication/authorization,configuring 196

responder, creating 194

server, default values, changing 195

SOAP, using with 193

statistics, viewing 200

tasks before creating realm 194

understanding 193

user credential location, configuring 196

username parameters, configuring 196

XML realms, authorization, understanding 197